



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



THE HISTORY OF THE  
... of ... the ...  
... of all the ...  
... on ...  
... Proverbs ...  
... by the late Archbishop ...

... of ...  
... of ...  
... a new ...

... OF ...

... of ...

... of ...

... OF ...



...the ... of the ...

...the ... of the ...

THE ... of the ...

"These ... works ... the ... of view, grounded ... of the ... philosophy of ... for ... useful publications."—*Spectator*.

THE ... of the ...

"We have ... the ... of its ... from our own ... —*Edinburgh Review* for March, 1851.

"This ... is ... a true knowledge ... —*Spectator*.

"A work ... —*Scotsman*.

A ... of the ...

"This ... is ... to be ... —*Edinburgh Review*.

THE ... of the ...

"A ... is ... It is ... —*Edinburgh Review*.

"This ... is ... of a great principle ... —*Edinburgh Review*.

"This ... is ... of ... —*Edinburgh Review*.

"This ... is ... of the West ... —*Edinburgh Review*.





A circular diagram representing Earth, showing horizontal lines for latitude. From top to bottom, the lines are labeled: "Circles Arctic", "Tropic of Cancer", "Equator", "Tropic of Capricorn", and "Antarctic".



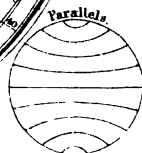
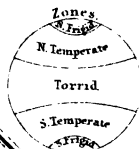
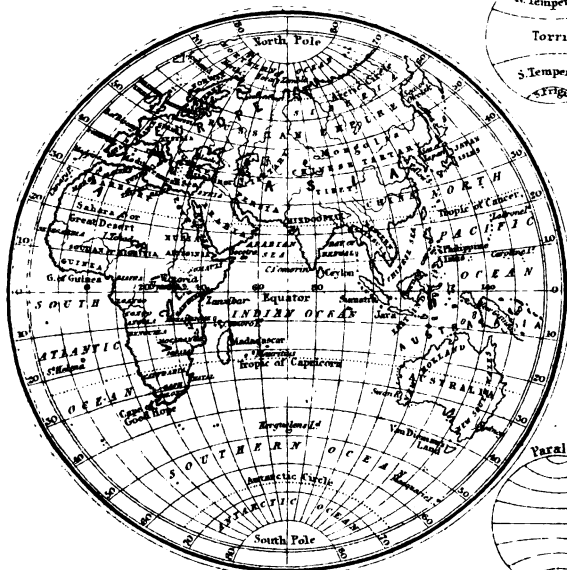
**MILES** 3500 3000 2500 2000 1500 1000 500 0

**FEET** 25000 20000 15000 10000 5000 0

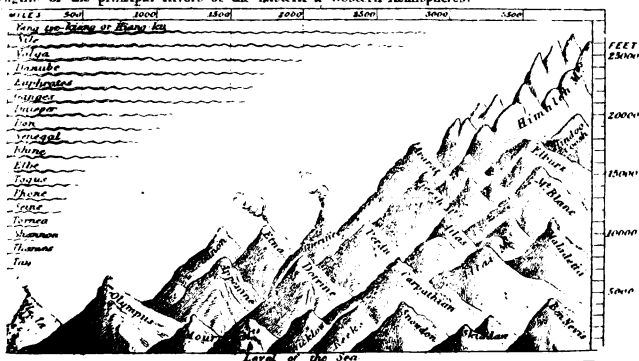
**Geological Strata (Right):**  
 Mississippi with the Missouri  
 Lawrence from E. to W.  
 Archaean  
 Muscovite  
 Devonian  
 Silurian  
 Cambrian  
 Level of the Sea

**Geographical Features (Left to Right):**  
 Montserrat  
 Carabobo  
 El Morro  
 La Platte  
 Adams  
 Ohio  
 Tennessee  
 Furman  
 Mayfield  
 Gasconade  
 Kansas  
 Illinois  
 Delaware  
 Schuylkill  
 Buckey Mountain  
 Level of the Sea

# EASTERN HEMISPHERE.



Lengths of the principal Rivers of the Eastern & Western Hemispheres.







AN  
INTRODUCTION TO GEOGRAPHY,

ANCIENT, MODERN, AND SACRED

WITH AN

OUTLINE OF ANCIENT HISTORY

BY

ROBERT SULLIVAN, LL.D., T.C.D.



---

Ninety-second Edition, Revised and Improved.

---

DUBLIN : SULLIVAN, BROTHERS,  
27, MARLBOROUGH-STREET.

LONDON:

LONGMANS AND CO. ; AND GROOMBRIDGE AND SONS.

JOHN MENZIES & CO., EDINBURGH.

HALIFAX, N.S. : A. & W. MACKINLAY.

MELBOURNE : GEORGE ROBERTSON ; AND SOLD BY ALL  
BOOKSELLERS.

---

1869.

201. 9 95.

---

**ENTERED IN STATIONERS' HALL, ACCORDING TO THE LATE ACT.**

---

---

Printed by **ALEXANDER THOM, 87 & 88, Abbey-street, Dublin.**

# CONTENTS.

---

	Page
Introductory Observations, . . . . .	7
Preparatory Questions for Young Beginners, . . . . .	8
Preliminary Definitions, . . . . .	17
Natural Divisions of the Earth's Surface, . . . . .	23
Great Divisions of Land and Water, . . . . .	25
Population and Extent of the Globe, . . . . .	28
Europe—its Political Divisions or Sovereign States, Seas, Gulfs, Bays, Straits; Islands, Peninsulas, Isthmuses, Capes, Mountains, Rivers, Lakes, . . . . .	28
Asia—its General Divisions; Countries, &c. . . . .	46
Africa—its General Divisions; Countries, &c. . . . .	51
America—its General Divisions; Countries, &c. . . . .	55
West Indies, . . . . .	61
Oceanica, Australia, and Polynesia, . . . . .	65
The British Empire, . . . . .	67
Historical Sketch of Great Britain and Ireland, . . . . .	96
Generalization of the Climates and Productions of the Earth, . . . . .	105
Questions on the Map of the World, . . . . .	110
Introduction to Astronomy, . . . . .	117
The Principal Mountains in the World, . . . . .	113
The Principal Rivers and Lakes, . . . . .	115
Sacred Geography, . . . . .	121
Ancient Geography, . . . . .	125
Different Races of Men, . . . . .	133
Sketch of Ancient History, . . . . .	135
Sketches of the History of the Principal Countries in Europe, . . . . .	167
Great Divisions of History, . . . . .	186
Geographical Pronouncing Vocabulary, . . . . .	187
Celtic Roots from which the names of many places, parti- cularly in Ireland, are derived, . . . . .	216

## INDEX TO THE MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

---

	Page
Exterior View of a National School, . . .	12
Interior View and Arrangement of a National School, .	13
Ground Plan of a National School, . . .	15
Circles and Zones, . . . . .	20
Illustrations of Geographical Terms, . . .	25
Map of Europe, . . . . .	30
Map of Asia, . . . . .	47
Map of Africa, . . . . .	54
Map of North America, . . . . .	63
Map of South America, . . . . .	64
Map of England and Wales, . . . . .	76
Map of Scotland, . . . . .	82
Map of Ireland, . . . . .	90
Celestial and Terrestrial Spheres . . . . .	117
Solar System, . . . . .	120
Different Races of Men, . . . . .	133

## PREFACE

---

### TENTH EDITION.

THE extensive and increasing demand for this little Work has enabled the Publishers to enhance its value by the addition of MAPS and ILLUSTRATIONS. The Maps, from their smallness, may appear to be of little use, but to learners they will be found to be more useful than if they were large and crowded. They will enable them to form clear ideas of the outlines and position of the several countries, and of the exact localities of the principal towns; which in the generality of maps it is not easy for children to do.

As the "Method of Teaching Geography," which appeared in the preceding editions, will be found in the Author's "Geography Generalized," to which this book is an Introduction, it was thought better to omit it, and to insert in its place some new, and, to children, more appropriate matter.

To the article referred to, the Teacher's attention is specially directed; and also to the author's observations in the Preface of his larger work.

**SEVENTEENTH EDITION.**

IN order to make this little work still more deserving of the favour which continues to be shown to it, the Author has carefully revised the **PRESENT EDITION**, and greatly improved the appearance of it, by having it printed in a new and, generally, a larger type. He has also added **QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATIONS**, which will materially assist the pupils in the preparation of their lessons, by enabling them to interrogate themselves and each other on the text before they go up to be examined by the teacher. The teacher will not, of course, confine himself to these questions; nor should he, except in the case of **DEFINITIONS**, require his pupils to answer them in the words of the book. This would be to go back to the old and absurd method of teaching Geography by rote. A satisfactory answer in suitable language is all that the teacher should require; and if the pupil answers in his own language so much the better.

---

**FIFTY-SECOND EDITION.**

**THE PRESENT EDITION** has been revised, enlarged, and improved by the Author. The principal **ADDITIONS** made to it are Sketches of the History of every country in Europe, and a Geographical Pronouncing Vocabulary, with Etymological and Explanatory Notes.

# INTRODUCTION TO GEOGRAPHY.

---

## FIRST LESSONS IN GEOGRAPHY.

BEFORE commencing GEOGRAPHY, the pupils should be made acquainted with at least the four CARDINAL or principal points of the heavens. This may be done in a few minutes. Take them out at *mid-day*, or in other words, at *twelve o'clock*, and tell them that if they look towards the sun, their *faces* will be in the direction of the *south*, their *backs* towards the *north*, their *right* sides to the *west*, and their *left* towards the *east*; and that this is the case *every day in the year at twelve o'clock*. Or lead them to connect the *east* and *west* points of the horizon with that part or quarter of the heavens in which the sun rises or sets,<sup>1</sup> as shown in page 10. Having fixed these points in their minds, let them return to the school-room, and *begin their first lesson on geography with it*.—In which side or wall of the room is the principal entrance? may be asked; and the answer will be, in the *south*.<sup>2</sup> Why? Because it is in the direction of the sun at twelve o'clock. In which side is the rostrum or master's desk? In the *north*. Why? Because it is in the

---

<sup>1</sup> During the *equinoxes* only, the sun *rises* and *sets* in the *east* and *west* points of the horizon. Between the vernal and autumnal equinoxes, the sun rises and sets *northward* of the *east* and *west* points of the horizon; and between the autumnal and vernal equinoxes, proportionally *southward*.

<sup>2</sup> Because in this room the door is so situated.



other end of the room, and that is *the side opposite to the south*. The *east* and *west* sides of the room will be as easily pointed out; and from the school-room the questions may be extended to the playground, and to the entire premises. The pupils will readily name the streets that run along or enclose the Education Grounds on the *north, south, east, and west*. These streets, they should be told, are the northern, southern, eastern, and western *boundaries* of the premises. The questions may then be extended to the city generally; as, on which side of the city is Merrion or Mountjoy square? In what direction is Sackville-street from Marlborough-street? Do they cross at right angles, incline, or run parallel, to each other? In what direction from Dublin does Kingstown, Lucan, or Ashbourne lie? Similar questions should be put regarding the *counties* bordering upon Dublin; and thus Geography is commenced, as it should be, with TOPOGRAPHY.

---

#### PREPARATORY QUESTIONS FOR YOUNG BEGINNERS.

Where do you live? In what DIRECTION is that from the school? Point in the direction of your house. Is it to the north, south, east, or west of this? or does it lie in a direction between any two of these points? In what direction is the school from your house? What is the DISTANCE between your house and the school? How many furlongs in a mile? How many perches in a furlong? How many yards in a perch? How many feet in a yard? How many inches in a foot? Show on your finger the length of an inch. Is your foot twelve inches in length? Is mine? Why is it necessary to fix upon a definite measure?

What is the length of your ordinary steps or paces? How many of them would it take to make up a perch? A furlong? A mile? Could you tell the probable distance between your house and the school by the number of your steps? Could you tell it by the time you require

to walk it? At what rate do you walk at your usual gait? If you walk at the rate of two miles and a half an hour, and if it takes you half an hour to walk here every day, what is the probable distance between your house and the school?

How would you find short distances, such as the length or breadth of the school-room? (By actual measurement.) How longer distances, such as the length of a field, if accuracy not required? (By stepping it.) How long distances as miles, if accuracy not required? (By the time we take to walk it.) Mention a place, village, or town, a mile from this? Two miles? Three? Four? Five, &c.? What is the direction of each of these places, villages, or towns from this? And what direction is the school from each of them?

What is a PLAIN? Tell me where there is a plain? What may be its extent, that is, its probable length and breadth? What is a HILL? What is a VALLEY? Tell me where there is a hill? In what direction and distance is it from this? What is a MOUNTAIN? Tell me the names of all the mountains you have seen? What is the height of the highest of those mountains? Could you measure the height of a mountain? (You are right: you could not, but you will soon learn.)

What is a RIVER? Tell me where there is a river? In what direction does it flow? What is the breadth of it? How might you ascertain? Did you ever cross it? How? Will not the length of the bridge give you the breadth of the river, or nearly so? Where does the river in question rise? Do you know where it goes to? Does it empty itself into the sea, or into some other river, or into a lake? Do you know its length from its source to its mouth? Does it get larger as it proceeds? Why? What is a POND? What is a LAKE? Did you ever see a lake? Where? How far across it? How far around it? What is a SEA? Did you ever see the sea? What sea was it?

What is a VILLAGE? What is a TOWN? What is a CITY? What is the name of the village you live in? How many houses do you think are in it? How many inhabitants? How are they employed? Name the principal trades and occupations of the people. Is this village

noted for any thing? In what parish do you live? Name the adjoining parishes. In what county? Name the adjoining counties. Point in the direction of each. What is the name of the principal town in the county? In what direction is that town from this? Name some of the others, and point in the direction of each.

You live in the **COUNTRY**: is the soil about your place fertile? Is the land well cultivated? What kinds of grain are raised by the farmers in your neighbourhood? What do they chiefly raise? To what markets do they send their produce? Do they rear cattle? Is the land in your neighbourhood better adapted for pasturage than for cultivation? Why? Are there any mines there? What kind? How many men employed in each?

In what part or **QUARTER** of the heavens does the sun rise? In what direction from us is he in the middle of the day? In which quarter of the heavens does he set? In which quarter of the heavens is the sun never seen by us? Very well; now recollect that these are called the **EASTERN, SOUTHERN, WESTERN, and NORTHERN** quarters of the heavens.

What is the cause of the **DAY**? When, therefore, does the day begin, and when end? Is the length of the day always the same? When the sun is ten hours above our horizon, what is the length of the day? When the sun is ten hours below our horizon, what will be the length of the day? When are the days and nights equal? In which of the cardinal points of the horizon does the sun rise and set, when this is the case? How then may you know the east and west points of your horizon? But when is it **MID-DAY**? (When the sun has finished half of his daily course, that is, when he is *midway* between his rising and setting points; because it will take him as long time to descend to the western horizon from that point as he was ascending to it from the eastern.)

When the sun is midway between his rising and setting points, (or, in other words, when he has attained his highest point of elevation in the heavens; or, which is the same thing, when he comes directly opposite to us in his daily course,) how much of the day has passed, and how much of it is to come? What hour by the clock

corresponds to mid-day? How therefore may we, on any day of the year, ascertain when the sun is in his highest or MERIDIAN point of the heavens? (And as the sun is *south* of us in that position, we have only to carry our eye down in a right line from the sun to the earth to find the SOUTH point of our horizon; and having found it, we have all the other CARDINAL points; for the NORTH point is directly opposite to the SOUTH, and the other two points are midway between.)

Point to the north, south, east, and west sides of the school-room. In which side or wall is the door? The chimney? The windows? What are the DIMENSIONS of the school-room; that is, its length, breadth, and height? What do you suppose? Take this rule or tape and measure the length and breadth. (Suppose they find the room to be forty feet long by thirty broad.) Could you represent the length and breadth of the school-room on your slates? Do you not often see in pictures not half so large as the page of a book, representations of men, and houses, and trees? Well, reduce in the same way the dimensions of the school-room, or draw it, as it is said, *on a small scale*.

Suppose our scale to be *an inch* for every *ten feet*, what should be the length and breadth of the drawing on your slate? How many desks or benches in the school-room? Their length and breadth? If they are ten feet long each, and about a foot broad, what should be their length and breadth in the drawing? If there is a table in the room, five feet by two and a half, what should be its dimensions in the drawing? Now complete the drawing. Describe it. (We have a *four-sided* figure on a *plane* surface, four inches long by three inches broad. This represents the length and breadth of the school-room on a scale of *an inch* for every *ten feet*. There are ten *broad* lines an inch long running across it, *parallel* to each other, to represent the benches. There is also a small four-sided figure *half* an inch long by a *quarter* of an inch broad to represent the table.) Very well; but there are other objects in the room, such as the chairs at the table. How would you represent them? (By putting them down in their *relative positions*, and in their *relative dimensions*.) What is the

*scale* by which you are to measure all the objects in this drawing? Very well; now draw a line an inch long at the bottom of your slate to represent the scale. This line represents how many feet? The half of it represents? The quarter of it? The tenth part of it? Very well; if you divide it into ten equal parts, each part will represent a foot.

Could you make a *map*? No! Could you? You? You? *Why*, I have just seen each of you making a *map*: that drawing on your slates is a *MAP* of the school-room. A map represents a portion of the earth's surface, as it would appear to the eye of a spectator elevated at an immense distance above it. If you could look down upon the school (the roof and ceiling being removed) from a great height, as from a balloon, such is the appearance it would present to you. If viewed from a small elevation, as from a hole in the ceiling, would it not have a similar appearance? Would it appear so small? What effect has distance on the apparent magnitude or size of objects? The sun is many millions of times larger than the moon, and yet they appear to us to be nearly of the same size; how do you explain this?



What is this? Oh, it is a picture of the school-house. And there are some of the boys going to school! And there is the play-ground, and the circular swing!

You are right; that is a picture of the school-house; or, as it is called, an elevation or an exterior view of it. And what do you think this is?



Oh, it is a picture of the inside of the school!

You are right; this is an interior view of the school, as it would appear to a person looking in from the door. Now, take this sheet of paper which I have rolled up into the form of a tube, and look at the picture through it.

Well, how does it appear to you?

Though I know that every part of it is equally distant from me, yet this does not appear to be the case. The part opposite the eye seems to be the most remote, and every object appears to be in its relative place; just as the school-room, and the objects in it, would appear to my eye, if I stood at the door and looked in. Or as a street would appear to a person looking up it.

Very well, such a view is said to be *in perspective*.

But let us, for the information of other teachers and pupils who are not acquainted with our school, enumerate all the objects in the picture before us. In front of us are the benches and seats; and on the bench next us are several slates, which, though they look very well in the

picture, should have been put into their proper places before the boys left their seats. Opposite to us is the master's seat or rostrum, which is raised on a platform, in order that he may be able to overlook the benches, and the whole school; and on the wall behind the rostrum is a large BLACK BOARD, for diagrams and demonstrations. On each side of the master's demonstration board are copies of the SCHOOL RULES, OCCUPATION OF TIME, PRACTICAL RULES FOR TEACHERS and the GENERAL LESSON, which is, as you know, constantly inculcated on your minds, and which, I am sure, you have all off by heart.

The door on the right leads to the offices in the rere; and the door on the left leads to the class-room and the gallery, where SIMULTANEOUS instruction is given to the pupils in large divisions.

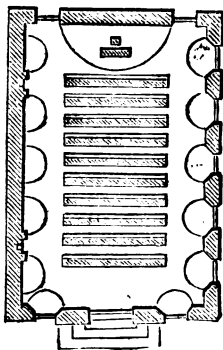
The maps on the walls speak for themselves; and those two round figures on the small pillars to the right and left of the platform, are the Terrestrial and Celestial Globes, which are always neatly covered when not required for use.

On the side wall to the left are large maps, which are let down by means of small pulleys, when lessons in geography are given; and under the maps are arranged pictures of animals and plants, or, as they are called, OBJECT LESSONS, which are, as you know, very interesting, and very instructive.

Under the object lessons, and opposite to the semi-circles, round which the classes are formed, are the black boards, which are found so useful in teaching, and with which every school should be provided. On the front wall, as on the others, there are arranged in due order, maps, object lessons, and black boards; and in the centre of it, opposite to the master's seat, is the clock, by which the school business is regulated.

Now, let us take another, and different view of the school-room. Suppose you were looking down from the ventilator, which is represented by those circular marks in the centre of the ceiling, what part of the school-room would be under your eye? Of course, the *ground* or floor, and all the objects on it, as the benches and seats.

Exactly; and if a drawing of the school were made, as it would appear from this, we would have a **GROUND-PLAN** or **MAP** of the school-room.



Here is a ground-plan of the school-room; but it is on a much smaller scale than the interior view, which was made larger in order that the several objects in it might be more distinctly represented. The ground-plan is on a scale of twenty feet to an inch. Now, let us point out and measure the several objects represented in the ground-plan or *map* of the school-room.

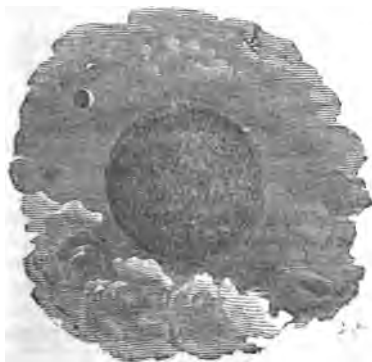
Now could you extend your map so as to take in the garden and grounds adjoining the school-house? How could you map a piece of ground a hundred yards square? If on a scale of an inch for every ten yards, what should be the dimensions of your map? Now let us make a map of the ground about the school-house to this extent. First, we should make a square—of what dimensions? The top or upper side we should call the ———? The bottom or lower side the ———? The right-hand side the ———? And the left-hand side the ———? Now let us put marks to represent the different objects in it,



as the school-house, the yard, the garden, &c. By what scale are these objects to be measured? Very well; draw a line in the corner of your map an inch long to represent the scale. If you divide the scale into ten equal parts, each part will represent ———? With regard to the positions of the objects to be represented, how should they be placed? (According to their relative localities.) Where should we make a small square or oblong to represent the garden? Why? Now, let us point out the several objects represented in our map, and tell what direction they lie from each other, and why? Now, could you tell how we might make a map which would include the whole parish in which we live? The whole county? Ireland is about three hundred miles long by one hundred and seventy broad: could you draw on your slate a map to represent it? If on a scale of an inch for every fifty miles, what should be the length and breadth of the map?

Here is a map of Ireland (or England, or Scotland, as the case may be) on a scale of ———. Let us place it upon the table, so that we may be able to look down upon it; and let us place the top of it in the direction of the *north* side of the school-room, in order that the places represented on it may appear in their relative positions. The outline or shape of the map represents the shape of the country; and these *dotted* lines represent the boundaries of the counties into which it is divided. These *shaded* lines represent the mountains, with the sides dark, and the tops light, just as they would appear to persons looking down upon them from a balloon. These *crooked* lines represent the rivers, and these *double* lines the roads.

These *dark* spots represent the lakes; and these little *circular* spots the towns. Here is the county in which we live; and here is the spot we are in at this moment. Now let us trace the counties which *bound* or lie next ours on the north, south, east, and west; and let us find out the principal towns, and measure the distance between them on the scale of the map; and let us also state the direction in which they lie from each other.



## PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

---

**GEOGRAPHY** is a description of the **EARTH**.

The form or shape of the earth is nearly that of a **SPHERE** or **GLOBE**.<sup>1</sup>

An **ORANGE** will enable a teacher to give his pupils a familiar and tolerably correct idea of the form of the earth. After exhibiting an orange, let him ask them if it is a perfect globe or sphere, and they will soon discover that it is a little flattened at the *bottom* and *top*; that is, about

---

<sup>1</sup> A **GLOBE** or **SPHERE** is a perfectly round body like a ball or a marble. A **SPHEROID** differs from a perfect sphere by being either *flattened* about the top and bottom, like an **ORANGE**, or *elongated*, like a **LEMON**. The former is called an *oblate*, and the latter a *prolate* spheroid. The word spheroid means *like*, or nearly a *sphere*.

the stem and the point opposite. And so, it may be observed, the curved surface of the earth is a little flattened at the *top* and *bottom*; <sup>1</sup> but not nearly so much in proportion to its size as an ORANGE.

Pass a knitting needle, or a piece of straight wire, through the centre of an orange, from the stem to the point opposite, and make it turn round upon it. This will exemplify the **AXIS** and **DIURNAL** motion of the earth.

The earth's surface, except where interrupted by elevations and declivities, *appears* to be flat, and not curved or globular; but this appearance is occasioned by the immense size of the earth.<sup>2</sup>

The **CIRCUMFERENCE** of the earth, or a circle round its thickest part, is nearly 25,000 miles.

The **DIAMETER** of the earth, or a straight line passing through its centre from any point in the circumference to the point opposite, is nearly 8,000 miles.

The **AXIS** of the earth is an imaginary line passing through its centre from north to south. The ends or extreme points of the earth's axis are called the **POLES**; the upper the *north* pole, and the lower the *south* pole.

The earth turns round its axis once in twenty-four hours producing **DAY** and **NIGHT**, alternately. This is called its **DIURNAL** motion. It also moves round the sun in the course of a year, producing the **SEASONS** in succession. This is called its **ANNUAL** motion.

The circumference of the circle which the earth describes in moving round the sun is called its **ORBIT**; and the *plain* level surface included within, or circumscribed by the orbit, is called the **PLANE** of the earth's orbit. The

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, about the **POLES**. The earth differs so little from a perfect sphere, compared with its great magnitude, that in any representation which we could make of it, the difference would be too small for perception. Hence, even the largest artificial globes are made perfectly round.

<sup>2</sup> In the First Chapter of the author's "Geography Generalized," the *globular* form of the earth is proved by clear and simple illustrations, to which the teacher can refer.

word orbit means a *circular* track or path; and the term plane, a level or *plain* surface.

THE EQUATOR is a circle passing round the middle of the earth at an *equal* distance from each pole. The equator divides the earth into two equal parts, which are called the northern and southern HEMISPHERES.<sup>1</sup>

LATITUDE is the distance of a place north or south from the equator.

PARALLELS of LATITUDE are circles drawn round the globe *parallel* to the equator.

The most important parallels of latitude are the two TROPICS,<sup>2</sup> and the two POLAR<sup>3</sup> circles.

The tropics and the polar circles divide the globe into five ZONES or belts; namely, one *torrid*, two *temperate*, and two *frigid* zones.

The TORRID zone lies between the tropics; the TEMPERATE zones between the tropics and the polar circles; and the FRIGID zones between the polar circles and the poles.

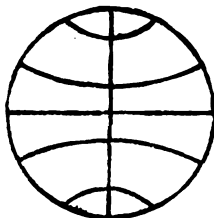
---

<sup>1</sup> That is *half spheres*, or, which is the same thing, half globes.

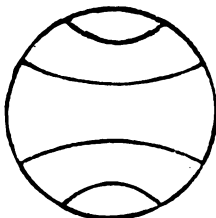
<sup>2</sup> The sun is never vertical or overhead to any place on the earth farther from the equator than  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees north and south, through which limits the tropics are supposed to be drawn; Cancer to the north, and Capricorn to the south. These parallels are called *tropics*, because when by the motion of the earth, the sun arrives at either of them, he turns back, as it were, towards the other. Before turning back, he apparently rests or attains the same elevation for two or three days. These periods are called the summer and winter SOLSTICES, that is, the *standing* or resting of the sun.

<sup>3</sup> When the sun is  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees south of the equator, that is, in the tropic of Capricorn, his rays fall short of the North Pole by the same number of degrees ( $23\frac{1}{2}$ ). Through this point a circle, parallel to the equator, is supposed to be drawn, which is called the *Arctic* or North Polar Circle; and through the corresponding point in the southern hemisphere a similar circle is supposed to be drawn, which is called the *Antarctic* or South Polar Circle. The North Polar Circle is called *Arctic*, in allusion to its corresponding circle in the heavens, which passes through the constellation ARCTOS, or the Great Bear; and *Antarctic* means *opposite* to the *Arctic*.

CIRCLES.



ZONES.



A **MERIDIAN** is a line running through any place north and south from pole to pole.<sup>1</sup>

The meridian which passes through Greenwich,<sup>2</sup> is called the **FIRST MERIDIAN**.

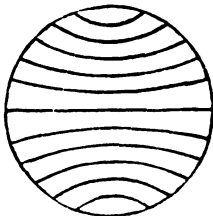
**LONGITUDE** is the distance of a place east or west from the first meridian.

The circle which crosses the equator obliquely is called the **ECLIPTIC**. The ecliptic marks the line along which the sun's rays are vertical or overhead, in the course of the year.<sup>3</sup>

MERIDIANS.



PARALLELS



<sup>1</sup> Such a line is evidently a *semicircle*, and if carried round the whole globe, a circle.

<sup>2</sup> In the vicinity of London, where the Royal Observatory is.

<sup>3</sup> The ecliptic properly refers to the heavens, and represents the circle which the sun, by the earth's annually revolving round it,

The **ZENITH** is that point in the heavens which is directly over the head of the observer.

The **NADIR** is the point directly opposite to the zenith.

The **SENSIBLE HORIZON** is the circle bounding the view of the observer by the apparent meeting of the earth and sky.

The **RATIONAL HORIZON**<sup>1</sup> is a great circle whose **PLANE** passes through the centre of the earth *parallel* to the plane of the sensible horizon.

The **PLANE** of the sensible horizon is the level or *plain* surface on which the spectator stands.

The **CARDINAL**, or four principal points of the horizon, are the **NORTH**, **SOUTH**, **EAST**, and **WEST**.

An **ARTIFICIAL GLOBE** is a representation of the *form* of the earth, with its divisions into land and water.

A **MAP** is a representation of the earth, or of a part of it, on a *plane* surface.

The top of the map is the north; the bottom, the south; the right-hand side, the east; and the left-hand side, the west.<sup>2</sup> In a map of the world, longitude is marked on the equator, and latitude on the circles that contain the two hemispheres. But in maps of particular countries, lon-

---

seems to describe among the fixed stars in the course of the year. The sun is always in the ecliptic, and hence, when the moon comes in a line between us and the sun, his rays are partially *eclipsed* or obscured. This is called an *eclipse* of the sun, and it is from this circumstance that the sun's apparent path in the heavens is called the *ecliptic*.

<sup>1</sup> The rational horizon is the circle which would bound our view if we could see the one-half of the globe. It is the circle which separates the visible hemisphere of the heavens from that which is not visible. The broad wooden circle on the terrestrial globe represents the rational horizon.

<sup>2</sup> Besides the four **CARDINAL** or chief points, **NORTH**, **SOUTH**, **EAST**, and **WEST**, there are four other important points with which the pupils should be made familiar, namely, the north-east, north-west, south-east, and south-west. The N.E. lies between the north and the east; the N.W. between the north and the west; the S.E. between the south and the east; and the S.W. between the south and

itude is marked at the top and bottom, and latitude at the sides. The lines running from the top to the bottom of the map, that is, *north* and *south*, are MERIDIANS; and the lines which run from one side of the map to the other, that is, *east* and *west*, are PARALLELS.

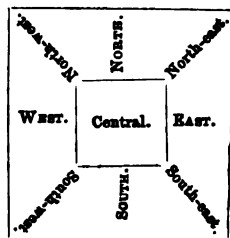
#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What is geography? The form or shape of the earth? The circumference of the earth? Its extent in miles? The diameter of the earth? Its length? What is meant by the axis, and what by the poles of the earth? Which is the north, and which the south pole? What is meant by the diurnal, and what by the annual motion of the earth? How long does it take the earth to turn once round its axis? How long to move once round its orbit? The meaning of the terms *orbit* and *plane*?

What is the equator? How does it divide the earth? The meaning of the term *hemisphere*? What is latitude? What are parallels of latitude? Which are the most important? How

---

the west. In a map, the general direction of these points, may be represented thus :-



But before the pupils are introduced to a map, they should be quite familiar with the principal points of the horizon, as recommended, page 11. And as a map is a picture of a portion of the earth's surface as it would appear to a person elevated at a great distance above it, when used for the first time, it should be laid upon the floor, or upon a table, with the top in the direction of the north side of the school-room. In this way, the learner will get a clear idea of what the map is intended to represent.

do they divide the globe? How is each of the zones bounded? What is a meridian? Which is the first meridian? What is longitude? What is the ecliptic? What is the zenith? The nadir? The sensible horizon? The rational horizon? The plane of the sensible horizon? The cardinal points? The next points in importance? What does an artificial globe represent? What does a map represent? How are longitude and latitude marked in a map of the world? How in maps of particular countries?

---

## NATURAL DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH'S SURFACE.

The **SURFACE** of the earth consists of land and water. The water covers more than two-thirds of the earth's surface.

The **LAND** is divided into continents, islands, peninsulas, capes, promontories, and isthmuses; and the **WATER**, into oceans seas, gulfs, bays, channels, straits, and lakes.

### DIVISIONS OF THE LAND.

A **CONTINENT** is a large extent of land *containing* several countries.

An **ISLAND** is a portion of land entirely surrounded by water.

A **PENINSULA** is a portion of land *almost* surrounded by water

A **CAPE** or *head-land* runs out into the sea; and if elevated or *mountainous*, it is called a **PROMONTORY**.

An **ISTHMUS** is a narrow neck of land, connecting two large portions together.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The human *neck*, *head*, and *body* will serve to illustrate the geographical terms, *isthmus*, *peninsula*, and *mainland*. In fact, *isthmus*, in Greek, from which the word is derived, means *the neck*. By curving or holding out one of his arms less or more from his body, the teacher can also illustrate what is meant in geography by *arms of the sea*, *gulfs*, *bays*, *creeks*, and *harbours*.



## DIVISIONS OF THE WATER.

An OCEAN is a large extent of water, corresponding to a *continent*.

A SEA is smaller than an ocean, and is generally bounded or confined by land.

A GULF corresponds to a *peninsula*, and is almost surrounded by land.

A BAY has a wider opening than a gulf, and is, generally speaking, not so large.

A STRAIT is a narrow passage of water connecting two seas. It corresponds to an *isthmus*.

A CHANNEL differs from a *strait*, in being much larger and wider.

When a strait is so shallow that it can be *sounded* or fathomed, it is called a SOUND.

A CREEK is a narrow portion of water running up into the land.

A HARBOUR or HAVEN is a part of the sea so nearly surrounded by land as to afford complete security for ships.

A ROAD or ROADSTEAD affords safe anchorage near the land, with partial shelter.

The mouth of a river widening into the sea, is called an ESTUARY or FRITH.

A LAKE is a portion of water entirely surrounded by land. It corresponds to an *island*.<sup>1</sup>

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The surface of the earth consists of? How much of it is covered with water? The natural divisions of land? What is a continent? An island? A peninsula? A cape or headland? A promontory? An isthmus? The natural divisions of water? What is an ocean? A sea? A gulf? A bay? A strait? A channel? An estuary or frith? A lake? What divisions of land and water correspond to each other?

<sup>1</sup> Large lakes in Ireland are called *loughs*, and in Scotland, *lochs*; as *Lough Neagh*, *Lough Erne*; *Loch Katrine*, *Loch Leven*. These terms are, however, usually applied to arms of the sea or bays: as the *Lough of Belfast*, *Loch Ryan*, &c.

## GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS ILLUSTRATED.



## THE GREAT DIVISIONS OF LAND AND WATER.

Of the land on the earth's surface there are **FIVE GREAT DIVISIONS**, namely, Europe, Asia, Africa, America, and Oceanica. Four of the great divisions of land are called **CONTINENTS**, namely, Europe, Asia, Africa, and America. Europe, Asia, and Africa, are also called the Old World and sometimes the Eastern Continent; while America is generally called the New World, or the Western continent. Oceanica is divided into Australia and Polynesia.

Of the water on the earth's surface there are also **FIVE GREAT DIVISIONS**, namely, the Pacific, the Atlantic, the Indian, the Arctic, and the Antarctic oceans.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> By looking on a map of the world, it will be evident that all these oceans communicate with each other, and that, strictly speaking, there is but one ocean or vast body of water, which extends over

The Pacific Ocean separates America from Asia and New Holland.

The Atlantic Ocean separates America from Europe and Africa.

The Indian Ocean lies to the south of Asia, the east of Africa, and the West of New Holland.

The Arctic Ocean surrounds the north pole; and the Antarctic Ocean the south pole.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

How many great divisions of land are there? Name them, and point out each on the map. How many of them are called continents? What is meant by the Eastern, and what by the Western continent? How is Oceanica divided? How many great divisions of water? Name them, and describe the situation of each. Strictly speaking, are the divisions of water on the earth's surface disconnected? The probable extent of each? From what circumstance did each derive its name?

#### SUBDIVISIONS OF THE CONTINENTS.

The continents or great divisions of land are subdivided into COUNTRIES or NATIONS, the inhabitants of which, generally speaking, differ in language, laws, customs, and manners. (These subdivisions are given under Europe, Asia, Africa and America.)

#### SUBDIVISIONS OF THE OCEANS.

Those parts of an OCEAN which approach or extend into the land are usually called seas, gulfs, bays, channels, or straits. Thus the *Pacific Ocean*, on its western side,

more than two-thirds of the earth's surface. Of these great divisions of water the Pacific is the largest, being about 8,000 miles from north to south, and 11,000 from east to west. The Atlantic is next in extent, being about 9,000 miles from north to south, and where broadest, from east to west, between 3,000 and 4,000 miles. The Indian Ocean is about 7,000 miles from north to south, and about 5,000 miles from east to west.

The *Pacific* was so called, because it was erroneously supposed when first discovered, to be free from storms. The *Atlantic* takes its name from Mount *Atlas* on the western coast of Africa; and the *Indian Ocean*, from *India* or *Hindustan*. The *Arctic* means the north, and the *Antarctic* opposite to the north. — See note, page 13.

forms the sea of Kamtschatka, the Sea of Okhotsk, the Sea of Japan, the Yellow Sea, the Chinese Sea, the Gulf of Tonquin, and the Gulf of Siam; and on its eastern side, the Gulf of California, and the Bay of Panama.

The principal branches of the *Atlantic Ocean* on its eastern side are, the Baltic Sea, the North Sea or German Ocean, the Bay of Biscay, the Mediterranean Sea, and the Gulf of Guinea; and on its western side, Baffin's Bay, Davis's Strait, Hudson's Strait, Hudson's Bay, Straits of Florida, Gulf of Mexico, and the Caribbean Sea.

— The principal branches of the *Indian Ocean* are, the Bay of Bengal, the Arabian Sea, the Persian Gulf, the Red Sea, and the Channel of Mozambique.

The principal branches of the *Arctic Ocean* are, the White Sea, the Sea of Kara, the Gulf of Obi, and Behring's Straits.

The *Antarctic Ocean* has no branches, because no part of it approaches any considerable tract of land.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

How are continents subdivided? Give examples. In what do countries or nations generally differ? Give examples. What are those portions of the ocean which approach or extend into the land called? Give examples, and point out on the map the principal branches of the Pacific, the Atlantic, the Indian, and the Arctic oceans. Why has the Antarctic Ocean no branches?

#### POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

The **POLITICAL DIVISIONS** of the earth are Empires, Kingdoms, Principalities, and Republics; which contain Cities, Towns, and Villages.

An **EMPIRE** consists of several countries united under one monarch, who is generally called an *emperor*.

A **KINGDOM** consists of one or more countries, governed by a *king*.

A **REPUBLIC** is a country governed by rulers chosen by the *people*.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What are the political divisions of the earth? What do these divisions contain? What is an empire? A kingdom? A republic? Give examples of each of the political divisions.

**ESTIMATES OF THE EXTENT AND POPULATION OF THE GLOBE.**

The extent of the land upon the surface of the globe may be estimated at upwards of 50 millions of English square miles. Of this, Asia contains more than one-third; America, less than one-third; Africa, about one-fifth; Europe, about one-fifteenth; and Oceanica, something less than one-fifteenth.

The amount of the population of the globe is estimated at from 1,000 to 1,200 millions.

Of the whole population of the world it may be estimated that more than one-half belongs to Asia; about one-fourth to Europe; one-tenth to Africa; one-twentieth to America; and one-fortieth to Oceanica.<sup>1</sup>

---

**EUROPE.**

**EUROPE** is the smallest, but by far the most important and the most powerful of the great divisions of the globe.

It is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, on the east by Asia, on the west by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the south by the Mediterranean and Black Sea.

Europe lies between the parallels of 36° and 71° north latitude, and between 9½° west, and 66° east longitude. Its length from Cape St. Vincent, in Portugal, to the north-eastern extremity of Russia is nearly 3,400 miles; and its breadth, from Cape Matapan, in the Morea, to the North Cape, in Lapland, is about 2,400 miles.

The **CLIMATE** of Europe is much milder than that of Asia or America in the same latitude. Compare for instance, the temperature of Ireland with that of Labrador; or with countries in the same latitude in Asia.

The **AREA** or superficial extent of Europe may be estimated at upwards of three and a half millions of English square miles; and its **POPULATION** at nearly 270 millions.

---

<sup>1</sup> Of the whole population of the globe about two-sixths are Christians, one-sixth Mahometans, and the remainder Pagans; with the exception of between four and five millions of Jews.

## GENERAL DIVISIONS OF EUROPE.

The *north* of Europe consists of Lapland, Finland, the northern parts of Russia, Norway, Sweden, and Denmark.

The *north-east* of Europe is occupied by Russia, and the *south-east* by Turkey and Greece.

The *middle* regions of Europe comprise Austria, the German States, Switzerland; and towards the coast, France, Belgium, Holland, and Prussia.

The *south* of Europe consists of three great projections or peninsulas, which comprise Spain and Portugal, Italy, Greece and Turkey.

To the *west* of Europe, are the British Islands, Great Britain or England and Scotland, and Ireland.

The *northern* countries of Europe lie, generally speaking, north of the parallel of  $55^{\circ}$ ; the *middle* countries, between  $55^{\circ}$  and  $45^{\circ}$ ; and the *southern* countries, to the south of the parallel of  $45^{\circ}$ .

## GENERAL TEMPERATURE.

The *CLIMATE* of the *northern* countries is *cold* towards the north, and *temperate* towards the south; of the *middle* countries, *temperate* towards the north, and *warm* towards the south; of the *southern* countries, *warm* towards the north, and *hot* towards the south. Their *PRODUCTIONS* vary with their climates.—See page 105.

In the following Maps the numbers, 1, 2, &c., indicate the position of the chief towns; and for facility of reference, they are arranged alphabetically.

Amsterdam, . . . 7	Cracow, . . . 22	Madrid, . . . 11
Bergen, . . . 19	Dresden, . . . 16	Moscow, . . . 24
Berlin, . . . 17	Dublin, . . . 2	Naples, . . . 10
Berne, . . . 5	Edinburgh, . . . 3	Paris, . . . 4
Brussels, . . . 6	Hamburgh, . . . 9	Petersburg, . . . 23
Buda, . . . 14	Konigsberg, . . . 21	Rome, . . . 3
Christiania, . . . 20	Lisbon, . . . 12	Stockholm, . . . 18
Constantinople, 13	London, . . . 1	Vienna, . . . 15



## POLITICAL DIVISIONS OF EUROPE, 1869.

The present political divisions of Europe amount to 44, namely, 4 empires; 13 kingdoms; 1 ecclesiastical state; 6 grand duchies; 5 duchies; 9 principalities; 3 republics; and 3 free towns.

The **EMPIRES** are Russia, Austria, France, and Turkey.

The **KINGDOMS** are Great Britain and Ireland, Prussia, Spain, Sweden and Norway, Holland, Belgium, Portugal, Italy, Bavaria, Denmark, Saxony, Wurtemberg, and Greece.

The **GRAND DUCHIES** are Baden, Hesse-Darmstadt, Mecklenburg-Schwerin, Mecklenburg-Strelitz, Oldenburg, including the Lordship of Kniphausen, and Saxe-Weimar.

The principal **DUCHIES**<sup>1</sup> are Brunswick, and Saxe-Coburg-Gotha.

The **REPUBLICS** are Switzerland, San Marino, and Andorra (Pyrenees).

The **FREE TOWNS** are Hamburg, Bremen, and Lubeck.

## CAPITALS OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES IN EUROPE.

Countries.	Capitals.	Population.	Countries.	Capitals.	Population.
England.	London.	2,800,000	Holland.	Amsterdam.	267,000
Ireland.	Dublin.	300,000	Belgium.	Brussels.	180,000
Scotland.	Edinburgh.	178,000	Italy.	Florence.	177,000
France.	Paris.	1,750,000	Portugal.	Lisbon.	280,000
Austria.	Vienna.	500,000	Bavaria.	Munich.	150,000
Prussia.	Berlin.	600,000	Switzerland.	Berne.	29,000
Russia.	Petersburgh.	820,000	Saxony.	Dresden.	128,000
Spain.	Madrid.	476,000	Greece.	Athens.	50,000
Sweden.	Stockholm.	125,000	Papal States.	Rome.	200,000
Denmark.	Copenhagen.	155,000	Turkey.	Constantinople.	715,000

<sup>1</sup> The other **DUCHIES** are Anhalt-Bernburg, Anhalt-Cothen, Anhalt-Deesseu, Saxe-Altenburg, Saxe-Meiningen; and the **PRINCIPALITIES** are Schwartzburg-Sondershausen, Schwartzburg-Rudolstadt, Reuss, Elder and Younger Branch, Lippe-Detmold, Lippe-Schaumburg, Hohensollern-Hechingen, Hohensollern-Stigmaringen, Waldeck, and Lichtenstein.



## FRANCE.

**BOUNDARIES.**—France is bounded on the north by Belgium and the English Channel; on the west by the Bay of Biscay; on the south by the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean; and on the east by Italy, Switzerland, and Germany.

Its length from Dunkirk to the Pyrenees is 600 miles; and its breadth from the western extremity of Bretagne to Strasbourg is 580 miles. Its **AREA** (including Corsica, Savoy, and Nice) is about 210,000 square miles; and its **POPULATION** is about thirty-seven millions.

France was formerly divided into 35 Provinces, but at the Revolution of 1789 it was divided into 86 Departments, most of which take their names from the rivers and mountains within their boundaries.

The chief towns are PARIS, Bordeaux, Marseilles, Lyons, Havre-de-Grace, Rouen, Nantes, Lisle, Strasbourg, Toulon, Brest, Cherbourg, Orleans, St. Malo, Boulogne, Dieppe, Calais, Dunkirk; and in Corsica, Bastia and Ajaccio. To these may be added Chambery and Nice, the chief towns of the lately annexed provinces (Savoy and Nice).

**FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.**—In *Africa*, Algeria, Senegal, and small portions of Madagascar, the islands of St. Louis and Goree on the west coast, and Reunion or Bourbon, and St. Marie, in the Indian Ocean. In *Asia*, Pondicherry, Chandernagore, Karical, Yanaon, and Mahé; and in the Pacific Ocean, the Marquesas, Tahiti or Otaheite, and New Caledonia. In *America*, French Guiana and Cayenne; and in the *West Indies*, Martinique, Guadaloupe, Marie Galante, the northern part of St. Martin, and the small isles of Desirade and Saintes. Also the small islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon, south of Newfoundland.

**MOUNTAINS.**—Pyrenees, part of the Alps, the Cevennes, the Vosges, the Mountains of Auvergne, &c.

**RIVERS.**—Seine, Loire, Garonne, Rhone, &c.

**CANALS.**—Languedoc,<sup>1</sup> Burgundy, and Orleans.

**ISLANDS.**—Corsica, Ushant, Belleisle, Rhe, Oleron, and Hieres.

**CAPES.**—La Hogue, Barfleur, Gris Nez, Bec du Raz.

**GULFS, &c.**—Gulf of Lyons, Bay of Biscay, Bay of St. Malo.

---

<sup>1</sup> The canal of Languedoc connects the Mediterranean Sea with the Atlantic Ocean.

## RUSSIA.

**BOUNDARIES.**—Russia is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the west by Norwegian and Swedish Lapland, Prussia, Austria, and Turkey; on the South by Turkey, the Black Sea, the Sea of Azov, and the Caucasian Mountains; and on the east by the Caspian Sea, the Ural River, and the Ural Mountains. Its length, from the southern extremity of the Crimea to the Arctic Ocean, is 1,700 miles; and its breadth, from the Ural Mountains to the Baltic, is 1,500 miles.

Russia occupies more than the half of the whole continent of Europe. It comprises the greater part of the ancient kingdom of Poland, Finland, East Bothnia, part of Lapland, the Crimea, Bessarabia, and part of Moldavia. Its AREA exceeds 2,000,000 of square miles; and its POPULATION is estimated at 64 millions.<sup>1</sup>

The chief towns are PETERSBURG, Moscow, Riga, Cronstadt, Archangel, Revel, Odessa, Kherson, Kaffa; Warsaw in Poland; and Abo in Finland.

**GREAT DIVISIONS.**—1. The Baltic Provinces. 2. Great Russia. 3. Little Russia. 4. West Russia. 5. South Russia. 6. East Russia.

**CHIEF TOWNS.**—1. St. Petersburg, Cronstadt, Riga, Revel, and Helsingfors. 2. Moscow, Nijnii Novogorod, Smolensk, and Archangel. 3. Kiev and Poltava. 4. Warsaw and Wilna, or Vilna. 5. Odessa, Kherson, Nikolaiev, Sevastopol, Kishenau (the capital of Bessarabia), Ismail, Akerman, Bender, and Kertch. 6. Kasan, Saratov, Astrakan, and Perm.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The Ural or Uralian Mountains, the Olonets Mountains, and the Valdai Hills.

**RIVERS.**—The principal rivers are the Volga, the Don, the Dnieper, the Dniester, the N. Dwina, the S. Dwina, the Memel or Nicman, the Ural, the Pruth, the Neva, and the Petchora.

**LAKES.**—Ladoga, Onega, Peipus, Ilmen, &c.

**ISLANDS.**—In the Baltic, Aland, Dago, Oesel; in the Arctic Ocean, Nova Zembla, Spitzbergen, &c.

**GULFS, BAYS, STRAITS.**—The Gulfs of Bothnia, Finland, and Riga; Archangel Bay, Onega Bay; Straits of Kaffa or Yenikale, and the Straits of Waygats.

<sup>1</sup> This is its estimated extent in Europe; but in addition to this, it comprises the whole of Northern Asia, and a large district south of the Caucasus, the population of which is estimated at about 7,000,000.

## GERMANY.

**BOUNDARIES.**—Germany is bounded on the north by the German Ocean, Denmark, and the Baltic; on the west by France, Belgium, and Holland; on the south by Switzerland, and Austria; and on the east by Poland, Galicia, Hungary, and Croatia. Its length, from east to west, is about 680 miles; and its breadth, from north to south, about 600 miles.

The AREA of Germany, in square miles, is estimated at 245,000; and its POPULATION at about 44½ millions.

Germany was formerly divided into 37 distinct and independent states, but prior to the war of 1866 the number was reduced to 31. It has been still further reduced to 28, 22 of which are united under the name of the North German Confederation, Prussia being the recognised head, and Berlin the seat of government.

For purposes of government and commerce, several of the Minor German States have leagued themselves with Prussia, and have thereby reduced the number of independent states to six, viz.—the Kingdoms of Bavaria and Wurtemberg; the Grand Duchies of Baden, Hesse-Darmstadt, and Luxemburg; and the Principality of Lichtenstein.

The North German Confederation comprises 2 Kingdoms, 5 Grand Duchies, 5 Duchies, 7 Principalities, and 3 Free Towns. The Kingdom of Hanover, the Grand Duchy of Nassau, the Electorate of Hesse-Cassel, the Landgraviate of Hesse-Homburg, the Free Town of Frankfort, together with small portions of Hesse-Darmstadt and Bavaria, have been incorporated with Prussia since 1866.

**KINGDOM OF BAVARIA.**—The AREA is 29,637 square miles, and the POPULATION is upwards of 4,600,000. The chief towns are MUNICH, Nuremberg, Augsburg, Ratisbon, Wurzburg, Bamberg, and Spire.

**KINGDOM OF WURTEMBERG.**—The AREA is 7,651 square miles, and the POPULATION is upwards of 1,700,000. The chief towns are STUTTGARD, Ulm, Hailbron, and Hall.

**KINGDOM OF SAXONY.**—The area is 5,771 square miles, and the population is upwards of 2,344,000. The chief towns are Dresden, Leipsic, Freyburg, and Chemnitz.

**GRAND DUCHY OF BADEN.**—The area is 5,913 square miles, and the population is about 1,340,000. The chief towns are Carlsruhe, Mannheim, Freyburg, Heidelberg, Constance, and Baden-Baden.

**MINOR GERMAN STATES.**—The most of the Minor German states resemble our counties in extent, population, and resources. The following are the principal;—1. Grand Duchies of Mecklenburg-Strelitz. 2. Mecklenburg-Schwerin. 3. Hesse-Darmstadt. 4. Baden. 5. Saxe-Weimar. 6. Oldenburg, with the Lordships of Knipphausen. 7. Duchy of Brunswick. 8. Saxe-Coburg-Gotha. 9. Saxe-Altenburg. 10. Saxe-Meiningen.

**CHIEF TOWNS.**—1. Strelitz, Friedland. 2. Schwerin Rostock, and Wismar. 3. Darmstadt, Mentz (or Mayence), Worms. 4. Carlsruhe, Heidelberg, Baden. 5. Weimar, Eisenach, Jena. 6. Oldenburg, Delmenhurst, Knipphausen. 7. Brunswick, Wolfenbittel, Helmstadt. 8. Gotha, Coburg. 9. Altenburg, Eisenberg. 10. Meiningen, Eisfeld.

**FREE TOWNS.**—The Free Towns are Hamburg, Bremen, and Lubeck.<sup>2</sup> The population of Hamburg, including the small territory attached, is about 225,000; of Bremen, 104,000; and of Lubeck, 50,000.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The Alps, between Tyrol and Bavaria, the Harz, Erzgebirge, the Riesengebirge, and the Black Forest Mountains.

**RIVERS.**—The Danube, Rhine, Elbe, Saale, Weser, Ems, Maine, Neckar, Iser, Inn, &c.

**LAKES.**—Boden See or Lake Constance, Schwerin, &c.

#### AUSTRIA.

**BOUNDARIES.**—Austria is bounded on the north by Saxony, Prussia and Russian Poland; on the west by Bavaria, Switzerland; and Italy; on the south by Turkey, the Adriatic, and Italy; and on the east by Russia and Turkey (Moldavia). Its length, from east to west, is about 800 miles; and its breadth, from north to south, 400 miles.

<sup>1</sup> See note, page 31, for the names of the others.

<sup>2</sup> Of the Free Cities, Lubeck, Hamburg, and Bremen are frequently called *Hanse Towns*, from a Teutonic word signifying a *league*. This league was formed in the thirteenth century by the principal commercial cities in Germany for mutual protection against pirates, feudal lords, &c.

Its **AREA** is upwards of 240,000 square miles; and its **POPULATION** is about 34 millions. It is the largest empire in Europe, except Russia, and it comprises under it several nations, which differ in language, laws, customs, and manners.

Austria comprises the archduchy of Austria, the kingdoms of Bohemia, Hungary (with Slavonia and Croatia), Galicia (with the Cracow and the Bukovina), Illyria, and Dalmatia, the Grand Principality of Transylvania, the Duchy of Styria, and the provinces of Tyrol, Moravia, and Silesia.

The chief towns are **VIENNA**, Prague, Pesth, and Buda (or *Ofen*), and Trieste.

**German Provinces.**—1. Lower Austria. 2. Upper Austria. 3. Salzburg. 4. Bohemia. 5. Moravia. 6. Silesia. 7. Tyrol. 8. Styria. 9. Illyria (comprising Carinthia, Carniola, and Istria.)

**CHIEF TOWNS.**—1. Vienna. 2. Linz. 3. Salzburg. 4. Prague. 5. Brunn. 6. Troppau. 7. Innsbruck. 8. Gratz. 9. Trieste, Klagenfurt, Laybach, Capo d'Istria.

**HUNGARIAN PROVINCES.**—1. Hungary. 2. Transylvania. 3. Slavonia. 4. Croatia. 5. Dalmatia. 6. The Military Frontier.

**CHIEF TOWNS.**—1. Pesth and Buda (or *Ofen*). 2. Klausenburg. 3. Essek. 4. Agram. 5. Zara.

**POLISH PROVINCES.**—1. Galicia. 2. Cracow. 3. Bukovina.

**CHIEF TOWNS.**—1. Lemberg. 2. Cracow. 3. Czernowitz.

**GULFS AND STRAITS.**—The Adriatic, between Italy and Dalmatia; the gulfs of Trieste and Quarnero, south of Illyria; Marlicca Channel, between Croatia and the island of Veglia.

**Mountains.**—The Carpathian, Sudetic, and Bohemian Mountains, the Rhetian or Tyrolese, the Carnic, the Noric, the Julian, and the Dinaric Alps.

**RIVERS.**—The Danube, the Elbe, the Oder, &c.

**LAKES.**—Platten See or Balaton Lake, and Neusiedler See, in Hungary.

#### PRUSSIA.

**BOUNDARIES.**—Prussia is bounded on the north by the Baltic, Mecklenburgh-Schwerin, Denmark, and North Sea; on the west by France, Belgium, and Holland; on the south by Austria, Saxony, and the Minor German States; and on the east by Russia and Russian Poland. Its greatest length from E. to W. is 715 miles, and its breadth from N. to S. varies from 80 to 350 miles.

The **AREA** of Prussia is about 135,900 square miles; and its **POPULATION** is upwards of twenty-three millions. It was divided into eight Provinces, which were subdivided into twenty-five Governments prior to the war of 1866. Hohenzollern, Lauenburg, and Iahde, were acquired before the late war. Schleswig-Holstein, Hanover, Hesse-Cassel, Nassau, Frankfort, and adjoining district, and portions of Bavaria and Hesse-Darmstadt have been since added.

Its Provinces and chief towns are as follow :—

Prussia Proper,	Königsberg, Pillau, Memel, Tilsit, Eylau, Dantzic, Elbing, Thorn.
Posen,	Posen, Bromberg.
Brandenburg,	BERLIN, Potsdam, Brandenburg, Frankfort-on-the-Oder, Küstrin.
Pomerania,	Stettin, Stralsund, Kolberg.
Silesia,	Breslau, Glogau, Gorlitz.
Prussian Saxony,	Magdeburg, Halle, Erfurt, Halberstadt.
Westphalia,	Munster, Minden, Paderborn.
Rhenish Prussia,	Cologne, Dusseldorf, Bonn, Aix-la-Chapelle, Coblenz, Trèves, Cleves.
Hohenzollern,	Sigmaringen, Hechingen.
Lauenburg,	Lauenburg.
Schleswig-Holstein,	Schleswig, Kiel, Flensburg, Altona.
Hanover,	Hanover, Hildesheim, Göttingen, Osnabruck.
Hesse-Cassel,	Cassel, Fulda, Marburg.
Nassau,	Nassau, Wiesbaden, Limburg.
Frankfort-on-the-Maine,	Frankfort-on-the-Maine.

Iahde is a small district of five square miles, purchased from Oldenburg in 1853.

**COMMERCE.**—The commerce of Prussia is considerable. The principal exports are corn, wool, timber, iron, flax, linen, and woollen cloths, Westphalia hams, &c.

**MOUNTAINS.**—Part of the Harz and Riesen-gebirge Mountains.

**RIVERS.**—Oder, Memel or Niemen, Pregel, Vistula, Rhine, Elbe, Ems, Spree, Moselle, &c.

**GULFS.**—Gulf of Dantzic, Frische-Haff, Curische-Haff.

**ISLANDS.**—Rügen, Usedom, and Wollin.

#### SPAIN.

**BOUNDARIES.**—Spain is bounded on the north by the Pyrenees and the Bay of Biscay; on the west by Portugal and the Atlantic; and on the south and east by the Mediterranean.

Its AREA in square miles is estimated at 180,000; and its POPULATION amounts to nearly 15,807,000.

PROVINCES.—1. Galicia. 2. Asturias. 3. Biscay. 4. Navarre. 5. Aragon. 6. Catalonia. 7. Valencia. 8. Murcia. 9. Granada. 10. Andalusia. 11. Extremadura. 12. Leon. 13. Old Castile. 14. New Castile.

CHIEF TOWNS.—1. Santiago, Vigo, Corunna, Ferrol. 2. Oviedo, Gijon. 3. Bilbao, Vittoria, St. Sebastian. 4. Pampeluna, Estella. 5. Saragossa, Huesca. 6. Barcelona, Tortosa. 7. Valencia, Alicant. 8. Murcia, Carthagena. 9. Granada, Malaga. 10. Seville, Cadiz, Cordova, Xerea, Gibraltar.<sup>1</sup> 11. Badajoz, Merida. 12. Valladolid, Salamanca, Leon. 13. Santander, Burgos. 14. MADRID, Toledo, Talavera.

Palma in Majorca; and Port Mahon in Minorca.

MOUNTAINS.—Pyrenees, Sierra Nevada, Sierra Morena, the Cantabrian and Asturian Mountains, &c.

RIVERS.—Minho, Douro, Tagus, Guadiana, Guadalquivir, Ebro, Xucar, Segura, Bidassoa, &c.

ISLANDS.—The Balearic Islands, Majorca, Minorca, Iviza, Leon, Formentera, and the Canary Islands.

COLONIES.—Almost the only remains of the vast foreign possessions of Spain are the islands of Cuba and Porto Rico, in the West Indies; and the majority of the Philippine Isles, in the Indian Archipelago.

#### PORTUGAL.

BOUNDARIES.—Portugal is bounded on the north and east by Spain, and on the west and south by the Atlantic.

Its AREA in square miles is upwards of 35,000; and its POPULATION amounts to about four millions.

Portugal is divided into six Provinces, namely, Entre Douro e Minho, Tras os Montes, Beira, Estremadura, Alemtejo, and Algarve.

The chief towns are, LISBON, Oporto, Setuval or St. Ubes, and Coimbra.

MOUNTAINS.—Sierra d'Estrella, &c.

RIVERS.—Minho, Douro, Mondego, Tagus, Guadiana.

ISLANDS.—The Azores, the Madeiras, Cape Verde Islands, &c.

COLONIES.—Besides the islands just mentioned, the Portuguese

---

*Gibraltar* has belonged to Great Britain since 1704.

have settlements in Angola, Benguela, and Mozambique, in Africa; also Goa, on the coast of India; Macao, near Canton; and part of the island of Timor, in the East Indies.

#### ITALY.

**BOUNDARIES.**—On the north by the Alps, which separate it from Switzerland and Austria; west by France and the Mediterranean; south by the Mediterranean; and east by the Adriatic.

The **AREA** of Italy, including Sicily and the other islands is about 122,000 square miles; and the **POPULATION** is upwards of twenty-five millions.

Italy now comprehends the former territories of Sardinia (with the exception of Nice and Savoy, ceded to France); Lombardy; the Grand Duchy of Tuscany, with the Duchies of Parma and Modena; the provinces of the Romagna, Umbria, and the Marches; the kingdom of Naples and Sicily; and the province of Venetia.

The following are the principal Divisions, with their chief towns:—

#### POLITICAL DIVISIONS IN 1868.

<i>Divisions.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Sardinia, . . .	Turin, Alessandria, Vercelli, Genoa, Casale, Novara, Asti, Coni.
Sardinia (Island), . . .	Cagliari, Sassari.
Lombardy, . . .	Milan, Cremona, Brescia, Lodi, Como, Bergamo, Pavia, Gonzago, Trent.
Venetia, . . .	Venice, Verona, Mantua, Padua, Vicenza, Treviso, Udine.
Parma, . . .	Parma, Piacenza.
Modena, . . .	Modena, Massa, Carrara, Reggio.
Tuscany with Lucca, . . .	Florence, Pisa, Lucca, Leghorn, Siena, Arezzo, Grosseto.
Romagna, . . .	Formerly Pontifi- cal States. { Ferrara, Bologna, Ravenna. Rimini, Ancona, Perugia. Forli, Fermo, Urbino, Ascoli. Naples, Gaeta, Capua, Salerno, Reggio, Benevento, Caserta, Taranto, Foggia, Bari, Aquila, Otranto.
Umbria, . . .	
The Marches, . . .	
Naples, . . .	
Sicily . . .	Palermo, Trapani, Marsala, Catania, Girgenti, Syracuse, Messina, Modica.
Pontifical States, . . .	Rome, Viterbo, Civita-Vecchia, Velletri.
Republic of San Marino, San Marino.	

**ISLANDS.**—Sicily, Sardinia, Malta (belonging to Great Britain), Corsica (belonging to France), Elba, and the Lipari Isles.



**MOUNTAINS.**—Alps, Apennines, Vesuvius, Etna (in Sicily).

**RIVERS.**—The Po, Adige, Ticino, Arno, Tiber, Volturno.

**LAKES.**—Maggiore, Lugano, Garda, Como, &c.

#### SWITZERLAND.

**BOUNDARIES.**—On the north by Germany; west by France south by Italy; and east by Austria.

The **AREA** of Switzerland in square miles is upwards of 15,000; and the **POPULATION** amounts to nearly 2,500,000.

Switzerland consists of twenty-two Cantons, which are united into one political body, called the Swiss Confederation.

The chief towns are, **BERNE**, Geneva, Basle (Bâle), Zurich, Lucerne, Lausanne, Friburg, and Neuchâtel.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The Alps, which separate it from Italy, Germany, and France. The loftiest summits of the Alps, on the Swiss side, are Mount Rosa, Mount Cervin, Jungfrau, Schrek-horn, Great St. Bernard, the Simplon, St. Gothard, and Mount Jura. *Mont Blanc* is in the neighbourhood of Switzerland (in Savoy).

**RIVERS.**—The Rhine, Rhone, Aar, Ticino, Inn, &c.

**LAKES.**—Geneva, Constance, Zurich, Lucerne, &c.

#### GREECE.

**BOUNDARIES.**—On the north by the Turkish provinces of Albania and Thessaly; on the west and south by the Mediterranean; and on the east by the Archipelago.

The **AREA** of Greece, including the islands, is about 20,000 square miles; and the **POPULATION** is about 1,331,000.

Greece comprises the Peninsula of the Morea, the Province of Livadia, the large island of Negropont, the Cyclâdes, some of the Sporâdes, and the Ionian Islands.

The chief towns are, **ATHENS**, Syra or Hermopolis, Hydra, Nauplia, and Patras.

**GULFS.**—Patras, Lepanto, Egina, Nauplia, &c.

**MOUNTAINS.**—Parnassus, Helicon, the Mountains of Maina, &c.

#### IONIAN ISLANDS.

The Ionian Islands, on the west coast of Greece, formed a republic under the protection of Great Britain, from 1814 to 1863, when they were restored to Greece.

The islands are, Corfu, Paxo, Santa Maura, Ithaca, Cephalonia, Zante, and Cerigo. The capital is Corfu.

## TURKEY IN EUROPE.

**BOUNDARIES.**—On the north by Austria and Russia; on the west by Dalmatia and the Adriatic; on the south by Greece and the Archipelago; and on the east by the Dardanelles, the Sea of Marmora, the Straits of Constantinople, and the Black Sea.

Its **AREA** in square miles is about 210,000; and its **POPULATION** is about 15,000,000.

Turkey in Europe formerly comprised all the south-eastern portion of the continent lying between the Black Sea and the Adriatic; but the southern part, in 1830, was formed into an independent kingdom (Greece), under the protection of Great Britain, France, and Russia.

The chief towns are, CONSTANTINOPLE, Adrianople, Salonica, Belgrade, Sophia, Bucharest, Jassy, Larissa.

The principal Islands belonging to Turkey are Candia, Cyprus, Scio, Rhodes.

**MOUNTAINS.**—Hæmus or the Balkan, Rhodopë, Athos, Olympus, Ossa, Pelion, Pindus, &c.

## SWEDEN.

**BOUNDARIES.**—On the north by Norwegian Lapland; west by Norway, the Cattegat, and the Sound; south by the Baltic; and east by the Baltic, the Gulf of Bothnia, and Russia.

The **AREA** of Sweden in square miles is upwards of 170,000; and its **POPULATION** is about 4,022,000.

**DIVISIONS.**—1. Sweden Proper. 2. Gothland. 3. Norrland, including West Bothnia and Swedish Lapland.

**CHIEF TOWNS.**—1. STOCKHOLM, Upsal, Gefle, Fahlun. 2. Gottenburg,<sup>1</sup> Carlsrona, Norrköping, Malmö, Calmar, Helsingborg. 3. Hernosand, Sundsvall, Umea.

The Kingdoms of Sweden and Norway form one European Power under the same crown.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The Dovre-field, &c., between it and Norway.

**ISLANDS.**—Gothland, Aland, St. Bartholomew (W. Indies).

**RIVERS.**—Dahl, Lulea, Tornea, Motala, Gotha or Göta, &c.

**LAKES.**—Wener, Wetter, Maalar, &c.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Gottenburg*—or rather *Gothenburg*, means the town (*burg*) or stronghold of the *Goths*. The present King of Sweden was crowned "King of Sweden and Norway, and of the *Goths* and Vandals."

## NORWAY.

**BOUNDARIES.**—On the east by Sweden; north by the Arctic Ocean; west by the Arctic and Atlantic Oceans, and the North Sea; and south by the Skager Rack.

The **AREA** of Norway in square miles is estimated at 122,000; and its **POPULATION** is about 1,600,000.

**DIVISIONS.**—1. Southern Norway or Norway Proper. 2. Norrland or Northern Norway.

**CHIEF TOWNS.**—1. CHRISTIANIA, Bergen, Drontheim, Røraas, Frederickstadt, Christiansand, Stavanger. 2. Hammerfest, Tromsøe.

The Kingdoms of Norway and Sweden form one European Power under the same crown.

**ISLANDS.**—The Loffoden Isles, Mageröe, Hitteren, Vigten, &c.

**MOUNTAINS.**—Dovre-field, Longfield, and Kolen Mountains.

**RIVERS.**—Glommen, Drammen, Louven, Tana, Alten, &c.

## DENMARK.

**BOUNDARIES.**—On the north by the Skager Rack; on the west by the German Ocean; on the south by Germany; and on the east by the Cattegat, the Sound, and the Baltic.

The **AREA** of Denmark in square miles is about 14,790; and its **POPULATION** is upwards of 1,600,000.

**DIVISIONS.**—1. Jutland Proper or North Jutland. 2. The Islands of Zealand and Funen. 3. Iceland. 4. Farøe Islands.

**CHIEF TOWNS.**—1. Aalborg, Viborg. 2. COPENHAGEN, Elsinore, Odensee. 3. Reikiavik. 4. Thorshavn.

**ISLANDS.**—The other islands are Langeland, Falster, Laaland, Bornholm, &c., in the Baltic.

**STRAITS.**—The Sound, the Great Belt, and the Little Belt.

**RIVERS.**—The *Elbe*, which was formerly the southern boundary of Denmark; and the *Eyder*, which separates Holstein from Sleswick. and by means of the canal of Kiel connects the Baltic with the German Ocean.

**CAVES.**—The *Skaw*, in the north of Jutland.

**COLONIES.**—Besides Iceland, and the Farøe Islands, Denmark possesses some small settlements on the western coast of Greenland, together with the islands of Santa Cruz, St. Thomas, and St. John in the West Indies, and the Nicobar Islands in the Bay of Bengal.

**HOLLAND OR THE NETHERLANDS.**

**BOUNDARIES.**—On the north and west by the German Ocean; south by Belgium; and east by the North German Confederation.

The **AREA** of Holland in square miles (including the Dutch portions of Luxemburg and Limburg) is 13,600; and its **POPULATION**, in 1859, was 3,543,775.

Holland includes the Provinces of Holland, Zealand, North Brabant, Utrecht, Guelderland, Overijssel, Friesland, Groningen, with Drenthe, and parts of Limburg and Luxemburg.

The chief towns are, **AMSTERDAM**, Rotterdam, the Hague, Leyden, Haarlem, and Utrecht.

**ISLANDS.**—Over Flakke, Voorn, Vlieland, Ter Schelling, Ameland, Walcheren, N. Beveland, S. Beveland.

**SEAS AND BAYS.**—Zuyder Zee, Haarlem Mer, Dollart Bay, &c.

**RIVERS.**—The Rhine with its branches, the Waal, Yssel, and Leck, the Meuse or Maese, the Scheld or Escout, &c.

**COLONIES.**—In the *West Indies*, Curaçoa, Buen Ayre, St. Eustatius, and part of St. Martin; in the *East Indies*, Java, and the Moluccas or Spice Islands, with settlements in Sumatra, Borneo, and Celebes; in *South America*, Dutch Guiana, or Surinam; and in *Africa*, El Mina, and several small forts on the coast of Guinea.

**BELGIUM.**

**BOUNDARIES.**—On the north by Holland; on the west by the German Ocean; on the south by France; and on the east by Dutch Luxemburg and Limburg and Rhenish Prussia.

Its **AREA** in square miles is 11,500; and its **POPULATION**, in 1859, was 4,623,089.

Belgium includes West Flanders, East Flanders, Antwerp, South Brabant, Hainault, Namur, Liege, with parts of Limburg and Luxemburg.

The chief towns are, **BRUSSELS**, Antwerp, Ghent, Bruges, Ostend, and Liege.

**RIVERS.**—The Scheld or Escout, the Meuse or Maese, with its tributary, the Sambre.

**CLASSIFICATION OF THE STATES OF EUROPE.**

Great Britain, France, Russia, Austria, and Prussia, are called "the Five Great Powers of Europe."

Spain, Sweden, Turkey, and Italy, are second-rate powers.

Holland, Belgium, Portugal, Bavaria, Denmark, Saxony, Wurtemberg, and Switzerland, are third-rate powers; and the remainder are fourth-rate, or under.

#### RELIGIONS OF EUROPE.

Generally speaking, the Roman Catholic religion prevails in the south of Europe, the Protestant in the north, and the Greek Church in the north-east. In the middle countries of Europe there is a mixture of Protestants and Roman Catholics, as in the German States, &c. Mohammedanism is confined to the Turkish dominions in Europe, and the extreme south of Russia.

#### SEAS, GULFS, BAYS, AND STRAITS.

**SEAS.**—The principal seas of Europe are the Mediterranean, the Baltic, the North Sea or German Ocean, the White Sea, the Black Sea, the Archipelago, the Sea of Marmora, the Sea of Azov, the Irish Sea, the Skager Rack, and the Cattegat.

**GULFS.**—The Gulf of Venice, Genoa, Lyons, Taranto, and Lepanto, in the Mediterranean; and the Gulf of Bothnia, Finland, and Riga, in the Baltic.

**BAYS.**—The Bay of Biscay, north of Spain.

**CHANNELS.**—The British Channel, St. George's Channel, the North Channel (north of the Irish Sea).

**STRAITS.**—The Straits of Gibraltar, Bonifacio, and Messina, in the Mediterranean; the Straits of the Dardanelles and Constantinople, connecting the Sea of Marmora with the Archipelago and Black Sea; the Straits of Kaffa or Enikale, between the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov; the Straits of Dover, the Sound, and the Great and Little Belts which connect the Baltic with the Cattegat.

**ISLANDS.**—The principal islands of Europe are, Great Britain and Ireland; Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, Elba, Majorca, Minorca, Iviza, Malta, and the Ionian Islands, in the Mediterranean; Negropont, and many others, in the Archipelago; Candia and Cyprus in the Levant Sea; the Azores in the Atlantic Ocean; Zealand, Funen, Gothland, &c., in the Baltic; Guernsey, Jersey, &c., in the British Channel; the Isle of Man; the Orkney and Shetland Isles; Iceland, Spitzbergen, and Nova Zembla.

**PENINSULAS.**—Spain and Portugal, called, by way of eminence, the Peninsula; Italy, the Morea, Jutland, the Crimea, &c.

**ISTHMUSES.**—The Isthmus of Corinth in Greece; and Perekop, which connects the Crimea with the mainland.

**CAVES.**—The North Cape in Lapland; the Naze, south of Norway; Cape Finisterre and Ortegal in Spain; Cape La Hogue in France; Cape St. Vincent in Portugal; Cape Spartivento in Italy; Cape Matapan in the Morea; Cape Clear in Ireland; and the Land's End in England.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The principal mountains in Europe are, the Alps, which divide Italy from Switzerland, Germany, and France; the Pyrenees, between France and Spain; the Apennines, which run down Italy; the Carpathian, north and north-east of Hungary; Haemus or the Balkan Mountains, in Turkey; the Ural or Uralian, between Europe and Asia; and the Dofrine or Dovrefield, between Norway and Sweden. The volcanoes or burning mountains are, Etna in Sicily, Hecla in Iceland, and Vesuvius in Italy.

**RIVERS.**—The principal rivers of Europe are the Volga, flowing into the Caspian Sea; the Danube and the Dnieper, into the Black Sea; the Don, into the Sea of Azov; the Rhine and the Elbe, into the North Sea; the N. Dwina, into the White Sea; the Vistula, Oder, and S. Dwina, into the Baltic; the Rhone, Loire, Garonne, and Seine, in France; the Tagus, Guadiana, and Ebro, in Spain; the Po and Tiber, in Italy; the Thames and Severn, in England; the Shannon, in Ireland; and the Tay and Clyde in Scotland.

**LAKES.**—The principal lakes are, Ladoga and Onega in Russia; Wener, Wetter Maeler, in Sweden; Geneva, Constance, and Neufchatel, in Switzerland; Garda, Como, and Maggiore, in Italy; Lough Neagh in Ireland; Loch Lomond in Scotland; and Windermere in England.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What is said of Europe? How is it bounded? Between what parallels, and between what meridians does it lie? What is its length? Its breadth? Its climate? Its area? Its population? Name, and point out on the map, the countries in the north, north-east, south-east, middle, and west of Europe. Where do the British Islands lie? By what parallels may the countries of

Europe be divided into northern, middle, and southern? Can you describe generally the climate of each? And the productions?

The present political divisions of Europe amount to? Can you state them? The empires are? The kingdoms? The grand duchies? The principal duchies? The republics? The free towns? How much of Europe does Russia occupy? The countries which it comprises? Trace them out with the pointer. The chief or principal towns? Point them out. Between what parallels and between what meridians does Germany lie? Its area? Its population? Into how many independent states is it divided? Under what general name are they united? Which is the principal state? The second? The next in importance? The Minor German states consist of? Their united areas may amount to? Trace them on the map, and give the chief towns of each division. How may Germany be divided? What is said of each?

Name, and trace on the map, the countries which Austria comprises. Give the chief towns of each, and point them out on the map. Name, and trace in like manner, the other countries of Europe, and point out the chief towns of each.

## ASIA.

ASIA is the largest, the most populous, and in many respects the most interesting of the great divisions of the globe. It was here that the human race was first planted; and here occurred almost all the interesting events recorded in the Bible. Here, too, the great empires of antiquity rose and fell; and from Asia the elements of society, civilization, and learning, were spread over the other divisions of the earth.

Asia is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, on the east by the Pacific Ocean, on the south by the Indian Ocean, and on the west by Europe, the Mediterranean, and Red Sea.

Asia extends from  $1^{\circ} 20'$  to  $78^{\circ}$  north latitude, and from  $26^{\circ}$  east to  $170^{\circ}$  west longitude. Its length, from the western extremity of Asia Minor (Cape Baba) to the eastern coast of Corea, is about 6,000 miles; and its breadth, from the southern extremity of Malacca to Cape Severo or Taimura in Siberia, is about 3,300 miles.

Its AREA may be estimated at about 17,500,000 of square miles, and its POPULATION at about 550,000,000.

## ASIA.



## REFERENCES TO THE MAP OF ASIA.

Aleppo, .	21	Canton, .	1	Mudina, .	14
Astrachan, .	18	Delhi, .	7	Muscat, .	17
Bagdad, .	11	Irkutsk, .	20	Nankin, .	2
Bassöra, .	12	Ispahan, .	9	Pekin, .	3
Bombay, .	6	Jerusalem, .	13	Sana, .	16
Cabul, .	8	Madras, .	5	Teheran, .	10
Calcutta, .	4	Mecca, .	15	Tobolsk, .	19



## GENERAL DIVISIONS.

Siberia, or Asiatic Russia, extends over the entire north of Asia.

The *south* of Asia, like the south of Europe, consists of three great projections or peninsulas, which comprise Arabia, India within the Ganges, or Hindostan, and India beyond the Ganges, or Chin-India.

In the *middle* regions of Asia, to the *west*, are the Turkish dominions, including Asia Minor, Armenia, Syria, and the Holy Land; and to the *south-west*, Arabia, Persia, and Afghanistan. In the *centre* are Independent and Chinese Tartary; and to the *east*, the vast and populous empire of China.

Near the *eastern* coast is the *insular* empire of Japan, corresponding to the British Islands on the west coast of Europe.

## PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES IN ASIA.

<i>Countries.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
China, . . . . .	Pekin, Nankin, Canton.
Hindostan, . . . . .	Calcutta, Madras, Bombay.
India beyond the Ganges, . . . . .	Ava, Rangoon, Bankok, Hué.
Persia, . . . . .	Teheran, Ispahan, Shiraz.
Afghanistan or Cabul, . . . . .	Cabul, Candahar, Herat.
Beloochistan, . . . . .	Kelat, Gundava, Kedje.
Arabia, . . . . .	Mecca, Medina, Sana, Muscat.
Turkey in Asia, including	
Asia Minor, . . . . .	Smyrna, Brusa, Sinope.
Armenia, . . . . .	Erzeroom, Erivan, Van.
Diarbekir and Kurdistan, . . . . .	Diarbekir, Mosul, Betlia.
Irak-Arabi, . . . . .	Bassora, Bagdad.
Syria, . . . . .	Aleppo, Tripoli, Damascus.
Palestine, or the Holy Land, . . . . .	Jernusalem.
Russian Asia or Siberia, . . . . .	Astrachan, Tobolsk, Irkutak.
Independent Tartary, . . . . .	Bokhara, Samarcand, Balkh.
Chinese Tartary, . . . . .	Cashgar, Yarkand.
Thibet, . . . . .	Lassa, Ladakh.
Japan Isles, . . . . .	Jeddo, Miaco, Matamai.
Ceylon, . . . . .	Candy, Colombo, Trincomalee.

*China.*—The *area* of China and its dependencies may be estimated at about equal to a *third* of the whole continent; and the *population* at about 300,000,000.

*Hindustan, or India within the Ganges.*—This vast and important country is, with few exceptions, either subject to, or under the influence of, British dominion.

*The British possessions* in Hindostan comprise the states and provinces under the Presidencies of Bengal, Madras, and Bombay, to which Scinde, the Punjab, Berar or Nagpore, Oude, &c., have been added. Also the large and important Island of Ceylon.

*Independent States.*—Cashmere, Nepaul, and Bootan.

The other European settlements in Hindostan are of little importance, namely, one of the Portuguese at Goa; five of the French at Chandernagore, Pondicherry, Karikal, Yanaon, and Mahé.<sup>1</sup>

*India beyond the Ganges* is divided into Assam, Bir-mah, and Malacca, on the west; Siam in the middle; and on the east the empire of Annam or Tonquin, which occupies the whole of the eastern part, including Tonquin, Cochin-China, Siampa, and Cambodia on the coast, and Laos in the interior. The *British possessions* in India beyond the Ganges are described in pages 67 and 68

#### SEAS, GULFS, BAYS, AND STRAITS.

*SEAS.*—The principal seas of Asia are, the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, the Chinese Sea, the Yellow Sea, the Sea of Japan, the Sea of Okhotsk, the Sea of Kamtschatka; the Bay of Bengal; the Persian Gulf, the Gulf of Siam, the Gulf of Tonquin; the Straits of Babelmandeb; the Straits of Ormuz, Behring's Straits; and the Straits of Malacca, Macassar, and Sunda.

#### ISLANDS, PENINSULAS CAPES.

The principal islands belonging to Asia are, the Japan

---

<sup>1</sup> The portion of India possessed by the Portuguese and French may be estimated at 2,000 square miles, and the population at about 700,000.

**Islands, the Philippine Islands, Ceylon, Borneo, Sumatra, Java, Celebes, the Moluccas or Spice Islands; the Chinese Islands, Hainan and Formosa; Saghalien, Loo Choo, the Laccadive and Maldiva Islands, the Andaman and Nicobar Islands, the Kurile Isles, the Aleutian or Fox Islands.**

**PENINSULAS.**—Hindostan, Malacca or Malaya, Cambodia, Corea, and Kamtschatka.

**CAVES.**—In the north of Asia, Cape Taimura or Sevëro. North Cape, East Cape, Cape Lopatka in Kamtschatka; Cape Romania, south of the Eastern, and Cape Comorin, south of the Western Peninsula of India.

#### MOUNTAINS, RIVERS, LAKES.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The principal mountains are, the Himalahs, the Altai, the Caucasus, the East and West Ghauts; the Taurus, the Lebanon, and the Ural ranges.

**RIVERS.**—The Kiang-ku or Yang-tse-kiang, the Hoangho, the Lena, the Yenesei, the Obi, the Amour or Saghalien, the Ganges, the Brahmapootra, the Irrawaddy, the Indus, the Euphrates, the Tigris, the Gihon or Oxus, the Sihon or Jaxartes, and the Maykuang or Cambodia.

**LAKES.**—The Caspian Sea, the Sea of Aral, the Dead Sea, and Lake Baikal.

#### ESTIMATE OF THE EXTENT AND POPULATION, WITH THE CAPITALS, OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES IN ASIA.

States.	English square miles.	Population.	Capitals.
Afghanistan, . . .	225,000	5,120,000	Cabul.
Annam, Empire of, . . .	500,000	13,000,000	Hué.
Arabia, . . . . .	1,000,000	12,000,000	Mecca.
Beloochistan, . . . .	160,000	1,000,000	Kelat.
Birman Empire, . . .	200,000	8,000,000	Ava.
Chinese Empire, . . .	5,350,000	250,000,000	Pekin.
Hindostan, . . . . .	1,400,000	180,000,000	Calcutta.
Japan Empire, . . . .	200,000	30,000,000	Jeddo.
Persia, . . . . .	800,000	10,000,000	Teheran.
Russia in Asia, . . . .	5,500,000	7,250,000	Tobolsk.
Siam, . . . . .	250,000	6,000,000	Bankok.
Tartary (Independent), .	800,000	6,000,000	Bokhara.
Turkey in Asia, . . . .	800,000	16,000,000	Smyrna.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What is said of Asia? How is it bounded? Its length and breadth? Its area and population? Its general divisions? Trace each on the map. The principal countries of Asia? Trace them on the map, and point out the principal towns of each. The estimated area and population of China? What is said of Hindostan? British India comprises? The Independent States are? What settlements have the French, Portuguese, and Danes in Hindostan? Their extent and population? Name, and point out on the map, the principal seas, gulfs, bays, and straits. Also, the islands, peninsulas, and capes. Also, the mountains, rivers, and lakes.

---

AFRICA.

AFRICA is remarkable for its vast deserts of burning sand, the ignorance and barbarism of its inhabitants, and the number and ferocity of its animals. Though some countries of Africa, particularly Egypt and Carthage, were early distinguished for civilization and commerce, yet it is at the present day the least known of all the great divisions of the globe; and it is greatly to be feared that even the noble efforts<sup>1</sup> now making under the sanction of the British parliament to introduce civilization and Christianity into the heart of this great continent, will, like all those that preceded them, be defeated *by the nature of the climate*, if not by the barbarism of the inhabitants.

Africa is bounded on the north by the Mediterranean Sea; on the south by the Southern Ocean; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean; and on the east by the Red Sea and Indian Ocean.

Africa extends from 34° 52' south, to 37° 21' north latitude, and from 17° 33' west, to 51° 30' east longitude. Its length from the Cape of Good Hope to the Mediterranean is about 5,000 miles; and its breadth from Cape Verd to Cape Guardafui is about 4,700 miles. Its AREA may be

---

<sup>1</sup> This alludes to the expedition to Africa in 1851, which was defeated, as was here anticipated; but the recent expedition under Dr. Livingstone, will, it is hoped, be crowned with success.

*estimated at about 10,000,000 of square miles English, and its POPULATION at about 80,000,000.<sup>1</sup>*

#### GENERAL DIVISIONS OF AFRICA.

1. The **BARBARY STATES**, including the whole country north of the desert of the Sahara, and west of the 25th degree of east longitude.

2. The **SAHARA**, or the Great Desert.

3. The **REGION OF THE NILE**, including Egypt, Nubia, with Dongola and Sennaar; Abyssinia, Kordofan, and all the country drained by its affluents.

4. **NIGRITIA**, which may be subdivided into *Soudan*, or North Nigritia, Central Nigritia, and Southern Nigritia.

**SOUDAN**, or North Nigritia, lies between the Kong Mountains and the Sahara; and is watered by the Senegal, Gambia, Niger, and the rivers flowing into Lake Tchad.

**CENTRAL Nigritia** lies between the Kong Mountains and the Northern shore of the Gulf of Guinea, to the Bight of Biafra.

**SOUTHERN Nigritia** includes the countries from the Bight of Biafra along the coast to Cape Negro, and inwards to the sources of the rivers flowing through it to the coast.

5. **SOUTHERN Africa**, or the regions south of Cape Negro, on the west, and of the Zambesi river on the east.

6. **EASTERN Africa**, or the regions north of the Zambesi river, round by the sea-coast to the confines of Abyssinia.

7. The **ISLANDS** of Africa are Madagascar, Bourbon, Mauritius or Isle of France, the Comoro Isles and Socotra, on the east coast; and the Madeira, Canary, and Cape Verd Islands, St. Helena, St. Thomas, Ascension, Goree, and Fernando Po, on the west coast.

---

<sup>1</sup> The population of Africa may be divided into seven distinct races, namely, the Numidians or Moors, the Egyptians, the Nubians, the Abyssinians, the Caffres, the Negroes, and the Hottentots.

*The British possessions in Africa* comprise the Cape of Good Hope, Sierra Leone, and several other settlements and forts on the western coast; and the islands of Fernando Po, St. Helena, Ascension, and the Mauritius or Isle of France.

#### PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES IN AFRICA.

<i>Countries.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Egypt, . . . . .	Cairo, Alexandria.
Barbary, which includes	
Morocco and Fez, . . . . .	Morocco, Mogadore, Fez.
Algiers, . . . . .	Algiers, Constantina.
Tunis, . . . . .	Tunis, Susa, Cabes.
Tripoli, . . . . .	Tripoli.
Fezzan, . . . . .	Mourzouk.
Barca, . . . . .	Derna.
Nubia, . . . . .	Sennaar, Dongola.
Abyssinia, . . . . .	Gondar, Axum.
Upper Guinea, . . . . .	Benin, Freetown.
Lower Guinea, . . . . .	Loango, St. Salvador.
Nigritia, . . . . .	Timbuctoo, Bornou.
Eastern Africa, . . . . .	Sofala.
Cape Colony, . . . . .	Cape Town.

#### SEAS, GULFS, BAYS, AND STRAITS.

**SEAS.**—The principal seas of Africa are, the Mediterranean and the Red Sea; the Gulfs of Guinea, Sidra, and Cabes; Saldanha and Table Bays; the Channel of Mozambique; the Straits of Gibraltar and Babelmandeb.

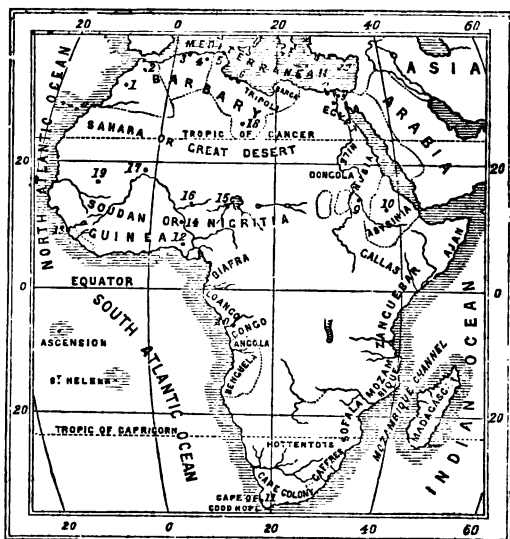
**CAPIES.**—The principal Capes are, the Cape of Good Hope, Cape Bon, Cape Verd, Cape Guardafui, Capes Spartel, Bojador, Blanco, Palmas, Three Points, Formosa, and Negro.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The principal mountains are, Mount Atlas, the Kong Mountains, the Mountains of Lupata, the Mountains of Abyssinia, and Sierra Leone.

**RIVERS.**—The principal rivers are, the Nile, the Niger or Quorra, the Senegal, the Gambia, the Zaire or Congo, the Coanza, the Orange River or Gareep, and the Zambesi.

**LAKES.**—The principal lakes are, Tchad. Debo or Dibble, Dembea, Maravi, Victoria Nyanza, Albert Nyanza, Tanganyika, and Nyassa.

## AFRICA.



## REFERENCES TO THE MAP OF AFRICA.

Alexandria, . . . 7	Cape Town, . . . 11	St. Salvador, . . . 0
Algiers, . . . 3	Constantina, . . . 4	Sennaar, . . . 9
Benin, . . . 12	Fez, . . . 2	Sierra Leone, . . . 13
Benoum, . . . 19	Gondar, . . . 10	Suez, . . . 8
Bornou, . . . 15	Morocco, . . . 1	Timbuctoo, . . . 17
Boussa, . . . 14	Mourzouk, . . . 18	Tripoli, . . . 6
Cairo, . . . 8	Saccatoo, . . . 16	Tunis, . . . 5

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What is said of Africa? How is it bounded? Its length and breadth? Its area and population? Its general divisions? Trace

each on the map. The British possessions comprise? The principal countries of Africa? Trace them on the map, and point out the principal towns of each. Name, and point out on the map, the principal seas, gulfs, bays, and straits. Also, the islands and capes, mountains, rivers, and lakes.

---

### AMERICA.

AMERICA, or the New World, was discovered in the year 1492 by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa. It is distinguished from all the other great divisions of the globe by the size and grandeur of its mountains, lakes, and rivers.

America is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean; on the south by the Antarctic Ocean; on the east by the Atlantic; and on the west by the Pacific Ocean. It is divided by the Gulf of Mexico and the Caribbean Sea into two vast peninsulas—one of which is called North, and the other South America. North and South America are united by the Isthmus of Darien or Panama, which in one part is only 28 miles across.

The length of the whole continent from north to south is upwards of 10,000 miles.<sup>1</sup> The breadth of North America, where broadest, is about 3,500 miles; and of South America about 3,200 miles.

The AREA of America may be estimated at about 15,000,000 of square miles; and the POPULATION at about 70,000,000.<sup>2</sup>

#### GENERAL DIVISIONS OF NORTH AMERICA.

The *northern* part of North America, from the great lakes to the Arctic Ocean, is called British America, except a portion of the north-western extremity, which belongs to the United States.

The *middle* regions, from the Atlantic, on the east, to the Pacific, on the west, belong to the United States.

---

<sup>1</sup> From about the 72nd degree of north, to about the 56th degree of south latitude.

<sup>2</sup> Of the whole population of America, it may be estimated that about 2,000,000 are Indians; 10,000,000, Negroes; 13,000,000, of mixed race; and 35,000,000, Europeans or descendants of Europeans.



The *southern* parts, and the Isthmus, form the republics of Mexico and Guatemala or Central America.

*British America* comprises the provinces of Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Labrador or New Britain, the Territories of the Hudson's Bay Company, and British Columbia. Also, the islands of Newfoundland, Cape Breton, Prince Edward, Anticosti, Vancouver, &c.

The AREA of British America may be estimated at about 3,500,000 of square miles.<sup>1</sup> It is bounded on the south by the States of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, New York, the Great Lakes, and thence by the parallel of 49° N.L. to the Pacific Ocean. On the north-west it is bounded by Alaska (U. S.), at the meridian of 141° W.L.

The States and chief towns are as follow :—

<i>States.</i>		<i>Chief Towns.</i>	
Canada E., or Quebec * <sup>2</sup>	.	Quebec, Montreal, Three Rivers	
Canada W., or Ontario, *	.	Ottawa, Kingston, Toronto.	
New Brunswick, *	.	Frederickton, St. John, St. Andrews	
Nova Scotia & Cape Breton, *	.	Halifax, Windsor, Yarmouth, Sydney.	
Labrador, .	.	Nain Fort.	
Hudson's Bay Territory, .	.	York Fort.	
Newfoundland, .	.	St. John's	
Prince Edward Island, .	.	Charlotte Town.	
British Columbia, .	.	New Westminster, Lytton.	
Vancouver Island, .	.	Victoria.	

The *United States* extend from the British possessions on the north, to the Gulf of Mexico on the south; and from the Atlantic Ocean on the east, to the Pacific Ocean on the west.

#### THE UNITED STATES.

##### NEW ENGLAND, OR NORTHERN STATES.

<i>States.</i>		<i>Chief Towns.</i>	
Maine, .	.	Augusta, Portland.	
Massachusetts, .	.	Boston, Salem.	
New Hampshire, .	.	Concord, Portsmouth.	
Vermont, .	.	Montpelier, Burlington.	
Rhode Island, .	.	Providence, Newport.	
Connecticut, .	.	Hartford, Newhaven.	

<sup>1</sup> For population, see under *Colonies and Foreign Possessions*, p. 70.

<sup>2</sup> The States marked with an asterisk form the *Dominion of Canada*, the capital of which is Ottawa.

MIDDLE STATES.			
<i>States.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>	<i>States.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
New York, .	New York, Albany.	Maryland, .	Annapolis, Baltimore.
Pennsylvania, .	Philadelphia, Pittsburgh.	District of Columbia, .	WASHINGTON.
New Jersey, .	Trenton, Newark.		
Delaware, .	Dover, Wilmington.		

SOUTHERN STATES.			
Virginia, .	Richmond, Norfolk.	Georgia, .	Savannah, Augusta.
North Carolina, .	Raleigh, Newbern.	Florida, .	Tallahassee, St. Augustine.
South Carolina, .	Charlestown, Columbia.		

NORTH-WESTERN STATES.			
Minnesota, .	St. Paul.	Indiana, .	Indianapolis.
Wisconsin, .	Madison, Milwaukee.	Michigan, .	Lansing, Detroit.
Iowa, .	Iowa City, Burlington.	Ohio, .	Columbus, Cincinnati.
Missouri, .	Jefferson City, St. Louis.	Kentucky, .	Frankfort, Louisville.
Illinois, .	Springfield, Chicago.	Missouri, .	Jefferson City, St. Louis.
		Kansas, .	Leocompton.

SOUTH-WESTERN STATES.			
Tennessee, .	Nashville.	Louisiana, .	Baton Rouge, New Orleans.
Alabama, .	Montgomery, Mobile.	Arkansas, .	Little Rock.
Mississippi, .	Jackson, Columbus.	Texas, .	Austin, Galveston.

PACIFIC STATES.			
California, .	San Francisco, Sacramento City.	Oregon, .	Salem, Oregon City, Portland.

ORGANIZED TERRITORIES.			
Washington, .	Olympia, Pacific City.	Nevada, .	Carson City.
Dakotah, .	Yankton.	Utah, .	Great Salt Lake City, Utah.
Nebraska, .	Omaha City, Nebraska.	Colorado, .	Denver City.
Idaho, .	Fort Laramie.	New Mexico, .	Santa Fé, San Diego.
Montana, .	Fort Union.	Arizona, .	Fort Tucson.
		Wyoming, .	Fort Thompson.

UNORGANIZED TERRITORY.			
The Indian, .			Fort Washita, Fort Gibson, and Kedron.

MEXICO AND CENTRAL AMERICA.			
Mexico, .	Mexico, Vera Cruz, Acapulco.	Honduras, .	Comayagua, Trujillo.
Guatemala, .	New Guatemala, Old Guatemala, Istapa.	Nicaragua, .	Leon, Granada, Greytown.
San Salvador, .	San Salvador.	Costa Rica, .	San José, Cartago.

## BAYS, GULFS, AND STRAITS.

The principal bays, gulfs, and straits of N. America are, Baffin's Bay, Hudson's Bay, Bay of Fundy, Chesapeake Bay, Bay of Honduras, Bay of Campeachy, Delaware Bay, Gulf of Mexico, Gulf of St. Lawrence, Gulf of California, Davis's Straits, Hudson's Straits, Behring's Straits, Barrow's Straits, Straits of Belleisle, and Nootka Sound.

## ISLANDS.

The principal islands are, the West Indies, the Bahamas, the Bermudas, Newfoundland, Cape Breton, Prince Edward, Anticosti, Long Island, Rhode Island, Vancouver Island, Queen Charlotte's Island, Greenland, North Georgian, Melville, and Bathurst Islands.

PENINSULAS.—Nova Scotia, Florida, Yucatan, California, Alaska.

CAVES.—Capes Farewell, Chidley, Hatteras, Sable, St. Antonio, Lucas.

MOUNTAINS.—The Rocky Mountains, the Apalachian or Alleghany Mountains, Mount St. Elias, Mount Fairweather, &c.

RIVERS.—The Mississippi and Missouri, the St. Lawrence, the Arkansas, the Rio Grande del Norte, the Mackenzie River, the Ohio, the Red River, the Tennessee, the Columbia, the Coppermine River, &c.

LAKES.—Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, and Ontario; Great Bear Lake, Great Slave Lake, Lake Athabasca, Winnipeg, and Nicaragua.

## GENERAL DIVISIONS OF SOUTH AMERICA.

The *northern* parts of South America comprise the republics of Venezuela, New Granada, Panama (since 1855), and Ecuador or Equator, and GUIANA in which the English, French, Dutch, Spanish and Portuguese, have settlements.

The *eastern* part forms the vast Portuguese empire of Brazil; and on the *western* coast are, Chili, Peru, and Bolivia or Upper Peru.

The *inland* portion between Brazil, Bolivia, and Chili, comprises La Plata, or the Argentine republic, Paraguay, and Banda Oriental or Uruguay.

The *southern* extremity, from the Pampas of La Plata to Cape Horn, is called Patagonia.

Between the two continents are the *West Indies*, or the Columbian Archipelago.

<i>States.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Venezuela, . . . .	Caracas, La Guayra, Cumana.
Granada, . . . .	Santa Fe de Bogotá, Cartagena.
Panama, . . . .	Panama, Porto Bello.
Ecuador or Equator, .	Quito, Guayaquil.
British Guiana, or Demerara,	Georgetown.
Essequibo, and Berbice, .	New Amsterdam.
Surinam or Dutch Guiana, .	Paramaribo.
French Guiana, . . .	Cayenne.
Brazil, . . . .	Rio Janeiro, St. Salvador.
Peru, . . . .	Lima, Truxillo.
Bolivia or Upper Peru, .	Chuquisaca, Potosi, La Paz.
Chili, . . . .	Santiago, Valparaiso.
La Plata, . . . .	Buenos Ayres, Cordova.
Paraguay, . . . .	Assumption, New Coimbra.
Banda Oriental or Uruguay, .	Monte Video.
Patagonia, . . . .	Port St. Julian.

#### ISLANDS.

The principal islands of South America are, the Falkland Islands, Terra del Fuego, South Georgia, Sandwich Land, New South Shetland Islands, Juan Fernandez, Galapagos, &c.

**CAVES.**—Cape St. Roque, Cape Horn, Cape Blanco, Cape Vela, &c.

#### SEAS, GULFS, BAYS, STRAITS.

The principal seas, gulfs, bays, and straits are, the Caribbean Sea, the Gulfs of Darien, Maracaybo, Guayaquil, All Saints' Bay, Bay of Panama, the Straits of Magellan, and Straits of Le Maire.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The Andes or Cordilleras, and their subordinate branches; as the Chain of Venezuela, the Chain of Chiquitos, the Mountains of Brazil, and the Mountains of Paraguay.

**RIVERS.**—The Amazon, the La Plata, the Orinoco, the Magdalena, the Madeira, the Francisco, &c.

**LAKES.**—Titicaca in Bolivia, and Maracaybo in Colombia which is connected by a narrow channel with the sea.

**ESTIMATE OF THE EXTENT AND POPULATION, WITH THE CAPITALS, OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES OF AMERICA.**

States.	English square miles.	Population.	Capitals.
British America, <sup>1</sup>	3,813,044	4,880,600	See page 56.
Central America, .	175,000	2,250,000	St. Salvador.
Mexico, . . . .	800,000	8,000,000	Mexico.
United States, .	3,400,000	30,000,000	Washington.
Bolivia, . . . .	318,000	1,700,000	Chuquisaca.
Brazil, . . . .	2,300,000	7,560,000	Rio Janeiro.
Chili, . . . .	144,000	1,200,000	Santiago.
Colombia, . . .	1,500,000	4,050,000	Bogotá.
Guiana, . . . .	135,000	164,695	Georgetown.
La Plata, . . .	927,000	1,600,000	Buenos Ayres
Paraguay, . . .	74,000	260,000	Assumption.
Peru, . . . .	524,000	1,400,000	Lima.
Uruguay, . . .	120,000	140,000	Monte Video.

**QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.**

By whom, and when, was America discovered? How is it distinguished from the other great divisions of the globe? How is it bounded? How is it divided? And how united? Its length? Its greatest, and least breadth? Its area and population? How may the population be divided? Its general divisions? British America comprises? The area and population may be estimated at? Trace on the map the British possessions, and point out the principal towns of each. The United States extend from? The New England or Northern States are? Trace them on the map, and point out the principal towns of each. Do the same as regards the Middle, Southern, and Western States. The late Spanish possessions in North America are now? Trace Mexico and Guatemala on the map, and point out the principal towns of each. Name, and point out on the map, the principal bays, gulfs, and straits. Also, the islands, peninsulas, and capes. Also, the mountains, rivers, and lakes.

How is South America bounded? Its general divisions? The British possessions in South America? Name the principal countries; trace them on the map, and point out the principal towns of each. Name, and point out on the map, the principal islands and capes. Also, the seas, gulfs, bays, and straits. Also, the mountains, rivers, and lakes.

<sup>1</sup> Including our possessions in Central and South America.

## WEST INDIES.

The islands called the *West Indies* include the following groups.—

1. The *Bahamas*, which are about 500 in number, but many of them are mere rocks and islets. The principal islands of this group are—Providence, Bahama, and Guanahani or St. Salvador. The latter, *Guanahani*, is remarkable as being the island on which Columbus first landed, and to which he gave the name of *St. Salvador*.

2. The *Greater Antilles*, which include Cuba, Hayti, (called also Hispaniola or St. Domingo,) Jamaica, and Porto Rico.

3. The *Lesser Antilles*, which lie along the northern coast of South America, nearly parallel to the Greater Antilles. The principal islands of this group are Margarita, Buen-Ayre, and Curaçoa.

4. The *Caribbean Islands* are divided into three classes, namely, the *Virgin*, the *Leeward*, and the *Windward* Islands.

The Virgin Islands are, Santa Cruz, St. Thomas, St. John, Tortola, and Virgin Gorda.

The largest of the Leeward Islands are, Anguilla, St. Martin, St. Bartholomew, Saba, Barbuda, St. Eustatius, St. Christopher, Nevis, Antigua, Montserrat, Guadeloupe, and Dominica.

The principal of the Windward Islands are, Martinique, Grenada, Tobago, Barbadoes, and Trinidad.

The principal islands belonging to *Great Britain* are, Jamaica, the Bahamas, St. Christopher, Nevis, Antigua, Dominica, St. Lucia, Barbadoes, St. Vincent, Grenada, Tobago, and Trinidad. The principal towns are, *Spanish Town*, *Kingston*, and *Port Royal*; they are in Jamaica.

The *Spanish* islands are, Cuba and Porto Rico.

The *French* islands are, Martinique, Guadaloupe, Marie Galante, and the northern part of St. Martin.

The *Dutch* islands are, Curaçoa, St. Eustatius, and the southern part of St. Martin.

The *Danish* islands are, Santa Cruz, St. Thomas, and St. John. St. Bartholomew belongs to *Sweden*.

*Hayti* (St. Domingo or Hispaniola) was taken possession of by the slaves during the French revolutionary wars, and formed into a government of Negroes, under the name of the *Republic of Hayti*. The chief towns are, *Cape Haytien*, *Port-au-Prince*, and *St. Domingo*.<sup>1</sup>

The people of Hayti are rapidly advancing in civilization. Free schools and a college have been established, and foreign teachers are employed at the expense of the government.\*

The total AREA of the West India Islands may be estimated at about 90,000 square miles; and the POPULATION at about 3,500,000.

MOUNTAINS.—The principal mountains are, the Blue Mountains in Jamaica, the Copper Mountains in Cuba, and Morne Garou (volcano) in St. Vincent.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

Describe the situation of the West India Islands? Into how many groups are they usually divided? Name them, and point out each on the map. Where do the Caribbean Islands lie? How are they divided? Name the Virgin, the Leeward, and the Windward Islands, and point out each on the map. The islands which belong to Great Britain? Point out each on the map. The principal towns, and where? Name, and point out in like manner, the islands which belong to the other European powers. What is said of Hayti? By what other names is it called? The principal towns? The principal mountains, and where?

<sup>1</sup> It was called *Hispaniola* (that is, *Little Spain*) by Columbus, who discovered it in 1495. It is also called *St. Domingo*, from the town of that name, its capital, under the Spaniards.

\* Subsequent accounts of the Republic of Hayti are not so favourable. The revolutions which have occurred since have checked civilization, and almost ruined their commerce.

## NORTH AMERICA.

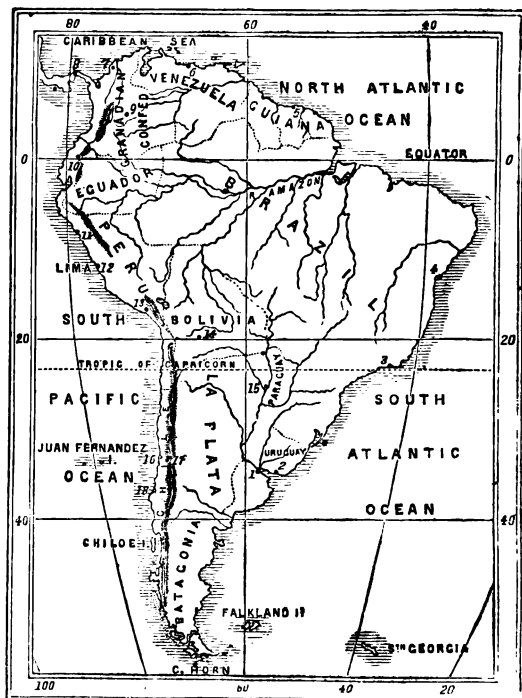


## REFERENCES TO THE MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

Acapulco, . . . 4	Leon, . . . 2	Philadelphia, . . . 10
Boston, . . . 12	Mexico, . . . 5	Quebec, . . . 13
Charlestown, . . . 8	New Orleans, . . . 7	Toronto, . . . 14
Guatemala, . . . 3	New York, . . . 11	Vera Cruz, . . . 6
Galveston, . . . 15	Panama, . . . 1	Washington, . . . 9
A Slave Lake.	C Winnipeg	E Michigan
B Athabasca.	D Superior.	F Huron.
		G Erie.
		H Ontario.



## SOUTH AMERICA.



Arequipa, . . . 13	Lima, . . . 12	St. Fe de Bogotá, 5
Assumption, . . 15	Monte Video, . . 2	Santiago, or St. Jago, 1
Buenos Ayres, . . 1	Panama, . . . 8	St. Salvador, . . 4
Caracas, . . . 6	Potosi, . . . 14	Surinam, . . . 5
Carthagena, . . 7	Quito, . . . 10	Truxillo, . . . 11
Conception, . . 18	Rio Janeiro, . . 3	Valparaiso, . . 16

## OCEANICA.

OCEANICA, or the *Watery World*, is inferior to the other great divisions of the globe, both in extent and population. It consists of *Australia* or New Holland, and the adjacent islands; and of *Polynesia*, or the multitudinous groups of islands in the Pacific Ocean.

The AREA of Oceanica has been estimated at about three millions of square miles, and the POPULATION at about twenty millions, but these estimates are evidently little more than conjectures.

AUSTRALIA<sup>1</sup> or *Australasia*,<sup>2</sup> consists of New Holland, Tasmania or Van Diemen's Land, New Zealand, New Guinea, New Britain, New Ireland, New Caledonia, Admiralty Isles, New Hebrides, Solomon Islands, Queen Charlotte's Islands, Norfolk Island, and some others.

The vast island of New Holland was discovered by the Dutch, but its eastern shores were first traced by Captain Cook, who named the place where he first landed *Botany Bay*, from the beauty and variety of the *flowers* which he found in every direction. It is now divided into five *Colonies*, which, with the year of their establishment, and their chief towns, are as follow :—

<i>Colonies</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
New S. Wales, 1788, . . .	Sydney, Port Jackson, Newcastle, Bathurst.
W. Australia, 1829, . . .	Perth, Freemantle, York, Albany.
Victoria, 1835, . . .	Melbourne, Geelong, Ballarat, Port Philip.
S. Australia, 1836, . . .	Adelaide, Kooringa, Port Elliott, Gawler.

<sup>1</sup> The animals of Australia differ remarkably from those of the other divisions of the globe. Some of their *quadrupeds* walk on two feet, and others have the bill of a bird.

<sup>2</sup> Australasia, that is, *Southern Asia*. The name *New Holland* was given by the Dutch to that portion of the north-western coast which they discovered, and the term was afterwards naturally extended to the whole island.

<i>Colonies.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Queensland, 1859, . . .	Brisbane, Ipswich, Rockhampton.
Tasmania (island), 1803, .	Hobart Town, Launceston, Richmond.
N. Zealand (N. island), 1840,	Auckland, New Plymouth, Napier, Wellington.
„ (S. island), „	Dunedin, Christ Church, Nelson, Port Lyttleton.

The principal exports of the Australian colonies are wool, gold, and copper. In 1793, a settler named M'Arthur imported eight merino sheep, and in 1861 the number was estimated at 17,000,000. The national products of Tasmania are iron, copper, coal, and salt; and those of New Zealand are gold, copper, iron, coal, and small quantities of silver, lead, tin, nickel, sulphur, and alum. The imports of these seven colonies in 1865 were valued at £36,854,270; and their exports at £31,065,293.

**GULFS AND BAYS.**—The principal are the Gulf of Carpentaria and Cambridge Gulf on the north; Halifax and Moreton Bays on the east; Port Philip, the Gulf of St. Vincent, and Spencer Gulf on the south; and Shark Bay with a few others on the west.

**STRAITS.**—Torres Straits, Bass Straits, Clarence Straits, and Endeavour Straits.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The principal are the Australian Alps and Blue Mountains in Australia, the Barren Mountains in Van Diemen's Land, Mount Egmont in New Zealand, and Mouna Roa in the Sandwich Islands.

**RIVERS.**—The Murray, the Lachlan, the Darling, the Swan River, in Australia; and the Tamer and Derwent in Tasmania.

The Islands of *Polynesia*, as the term denotes, are exceedingly numerous. The principal groups are—the Ladrone or Marianne, the Pelew, the Caroline, and the Sandwich Islands, north of the equator; and the Society Islands, the Friendly Isles, the Navigators' Islands, Feejee, the Marquesas, and the Washington Islands, south of the equator.

<sup>1</sup> Another settlement has been recently formed at Port Essington,

<sup>2</sup> North Australia, the chief town of which is *Victoria*.

The inhabitants of the Society, Sandwich, and Friendly Islands, from their intercourse with Europeans, have made considerable advances in civilization and Christianity. In the Sandwich Islands alone there are nearly 1,000 schools under the care of European Missionaries, in which upwards of 50,000 native children are instructed.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What is said of Oceanica? It consists of? The meaning of the terms *Australia* and *Polynesia*? The estimated area and population of Oceanica? Australia consists of? To what part of Australia does the term *New Holland* properly apply? Point out on the map each of the Australian islands? What is said of Captain Cook? Name the settlements, trace them on the map, and point out the chief towns? What is said of the animals of Australia? Polynesia consists of? Point them out on the map. What is said of the Society, Sandwich, and Friendly Islands?

---

## THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

The **BRITISH EMPIRE** consists of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, and of extensive possessions and numerous colonies in every quarter of the world.

The island of Great Britain comprises England and Wales, or South Britain; and Scotland or North Britain. Ireland lies to the west of Great Britain, and is sometimes called West Britain. Great Britain and Ireland, with the adjacent islands, are usually called the British Isles.

The British possessions are:—

*In Europe*—Heligoland, a small island in the German Ocean, about twenty-six miles from the mouths of the Elbe and Weser; Gibraltar, an important fortress in the south of Spain, commanding the entrance to the Mediterranean; Malta (together with Gozo and Comino), an important and celebrated island in the Mediterranean, to the south of Sicily.

*In Asia*—The greater part of India or Hindostan, and the large and important Island of Ceylon, near the south-eastern extremity of it. And in *India beyond the Ganges* or the Eastern Peninsula, Assam, Aracan, Pegu,

the Tenasserim Provinces; and *The Straits' Settlements* or Malacca, and the islands of Penang and Singapore; also, the Island of Hong Kong, ceded to us by the Chinese, in 1842. To these may be added Aden, an important town and stronghold in Arabia, which commands the entrance of the Red Sea; and the interesting settlements at Sarawak<sup>1</sup> and Labuan, established in 1848, under the late Sir James Brook.

*In Australia*—The greater part of the vast island of New Holland, Tasmania, New Zealand, and Norfolk Island.

*In Africa*—The important and flourishing colony of the Cape of Good Hope, Sierra Leone, and several other settlements and forts on the western coast; and the islands of Fernando Po, St. Helena, Ascension, and the Mauritius or Isle of France.

*In North America*—Labrador, the countries around Hudson's Bay, Upper and Lower Canada, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Newfoundland, Prince Edward Island, Cape Breton, the Bermudas or Somers's Island, Belize, and other settlements in the Bay of Honduras, Vancouver Island, and British Columbia.

*In South America*—The settlements of Demerara, Essequibo, and Berbice in Guiana; and the Falkland Islands, near Cape Horn.

*In the West Indies*—The Lucayos or Bahama Islands, Jamaica, Barbadoes, Trinidad, and several other important islands.

The AREA of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland may be estimated at about 122,500 square miles; and the POPULATION at about 30,000,000.

It has been estimated that Great Britain rules over an extent of territory *fifty* times as large as itself, and over a population more than *five* times as numerous as its own. In fact, the sun never sets upon the British dominions.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sarawak* is a country in the north of Borneo; and *Labuan* is an island near the north-west coast of it (Borneo).

The regular army amounts to upwards of 200,000 men; and the navy consists of above 600 ships of war, more than a hundred of which carry from 72 to 120 guns each. The number of vessels engaged in British trade is about 30,000; and the number of seamen employed in them is upwards of 200,000.

The REVENUE of Great Britain and Ireland in 1868 amounted to £72,742,590 10s. 1d.; that is, nearly equal to a third of the sum total of the revenues of all the States of Europe.

The NATIONAL DEBT amounted in 1868 to £771,234,960; that is, to more than a half of the sum total of the debts of all the States of Europe. But the national PROPERTY exceeds, it is estimated, £3,700,000,000; and if colonial property be included, £5,500,000,000. The national INCOME, or the produce from all kinds of industry and property, is valued at upwards of £500,000,000 a-year.

## EXTENT AND POPULATION OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

BRITISH ISLANDS.	Extent in square miles.	Population.			
		1881.	1841.	1861.	1861.
<b>GREAT BRITAIN:</b>					
England, . . .	50,387	13,091,005	14,995,138	16,733,947	} 20,061,725
Wales, . . .	7,425	806,182	911,603	1,188,821	
Scotland, . . .	31,167	2,365,114	2,620,184	2,870,784	
<b>IRELAND, . . .</b>	<b>32,512</b>	<b>7,767,401</b>	<b>8,175,124</b>	<b>6,515,794</b>	<b>5,764,543</b>
Ile of Man, . . .	220	41,000	47,975	52,116	52,339
Guernsey, &c., . .	50	26,128	28,521	33,645	29,846
Jersey, . . .	62	36,582	47,544	57,155	56,678
<b>ARMY, NAVY, &amp;c.,</b>		<b>277,017</b>	<b>188,453</b>	<b>167,604</b>	<b>*275,900</b>
<b>Total of United Kingdom, }</b>	<b>121,823</b>	<b>24,410,429</b>	<b>27,019,558</b>	<b>27,614,866</b>	<b>29,302,282</b>

\* Such part of the Army, Navy, and Merchant Seamen, as were at home or within the United Kingdom, on the night when the census was taken, are included in this enumeration. At this time, according to official returns, the Army abroad amounted to about 137,000 men; the Royal Navy and Marines to about 42,900; and Merchant Seamen to about 96,000.

COLONIES AND FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.	Estimate of the extent in sq. miles.	Estimate of the Population
IN EUROPE.		
Gibraltar, Malta, Gozo, Comino, & Heligoland.	130	150,000
IN ASIA.		
Presidencies of Bengal, Madras, and Bombay.	645,000	100,000,000
Scinde and the Punjab.	180,000	4,000,000
The Island of Ceylon.	25,000	1,500,000
Assam, Aracan, the Tenasserim Provinces, Pegu, Berar, Oude, &c.,	180,000	5,000,000
Forts and Settlements, comprising Aden, Malacca, Pulo-Penang, Singapore, Hong Kong, Labuan, Tranquebar, Serampore, &c.,	2,000	250,000
IN AFRICA.		
Cape Colony.	120,000	261,436
Port Natal.	18,000	193,103
Sierra Leone, Gambia, Gold Coast, and Cape Coast Castle.	2,000	325,323
The Mauritius, St. Helena, Ascension, Roderigue, and the Seychelle Islands.	1,000	187,706
IN NORTH AMERICA.		
Canada East, or Quebec.	100,000	1,226,840
Canada West, or Ontario.	250,000	1,655,022
New Brunswick.	27,700	252,100
Nova Scotia, and Cape Breton.	18,700	336,300
Newfoundland.	36,000	123,000
Prince Edward Island.	2,200	81,000
Hudson's Bay Territory, Labrador, British Columbia, and Vancouver's Island.	3,200,000	266,900
IN CENTRAL AMERICA.		
Honduras.	62,055	11,066
British West India Islands.	15,000	805,106
IN SOUTH AMERICA.		
Guiana, comprising Demerara, Essequibo, and Berbice.	98,889	126,000
Falkland Islands.	2,500	270
IN AUSTRALASIA.		
New South Wales, South Australia, Western Australia, Tasmania, New Zealand, Norfolk Island.	2,500,000	1,000,000
TRIBUTARY AND PROTECTED STATES.		
In India, Mysore, Cochin, and the dominions of the Nizam, &c.	470,000	37,000,000
Total of the British Empire, in round numbers.	7,895,674	154,751,172

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The British Empire consists of? Great Britain includes? The British isles? The British possessions in Europe? In Asia? In Australia? In Africa? In North America? In South America? In the West Indies? The area of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland? The estimated extent of the territory over which Great Britain rules? The estimated amount of the population? The British army amounts to? The navy consists of? The number of ships engaged in trade? The number of seamen? The annual revenue? The amount of the national debt? The national property estimated at? The national income amounts to?

---

## ENGLAND AND WALES.

ENGLAND is bounded on the north by the river Tweed, the Cheviot Hills, and the Solway Frith, which divide it from Scotland; on the south by the English or British Channel; on the east by the German Ocean; on the west by St. George's Channel and the Irish Sea.

England lies nearly between the parallels of  $50^{\circ}$  and  $56^{\circ}$  north latitude, and between about two degrees of east, and six of west longitude.<sup>1</sup> Its length from the coast of Dorsetshire to Berwick-on-Tweed, is about 360 miles; and its breadth from St. David's Head, in Pembrokeshire, to Lowestoft, in Suffolk, is about 300 miles. Its AREA is estimated at 57,812 square miles, or 37,094,400 acres. The POPULATION of England and Wales, according to the last census<sup>2</sup> (1861), amounts to 20,061,725, or upwards of twenty millions.

---

<sup>1</sup> Accurately, between  $1^{\circ} 46'$  east, and  $5^{\circ} 41'$  west longitude.

<sup>2</sup> The last census (1861) exhibits an increase of about 12 per cent. for England and Wales, and of about 6 per cent. for Scotland; but for Ireland a decrease of about 12 per cent.



England is divided into forty COUNTIES or SHIRES, and Wales into twelve, which, with the principal towns, are as follow:—

## SIX NORTHERN COUNTIES OF ENGLAND.

*Counties.**Principal Towns.*

Northumberland, <sup>1</sup>	Newcastle, Berwick, Alnwick, Morpeth.
Cumberland, .	Carlisle, Whitehaven, Penrith, Maryport.
Westmoreland, <sup>2</sup>	Appleby, Kendal, Bowness.
Durham, .	Durham, Sunderland, Stockton.
Yorkshire, .	York, Leeds, Sheffield, Hull, Redcar, Harrowgate.
Lancashire, <sup>3</sup>	Liverpool, Manchester, Lancaster.
FOUR ADJOINING WALES.	
Cheshire, <sup>4</sup>	Chester, Stockport, Macclesfield.
Shropshire, .	Shrewsbury, Ludlow, Bridgenorth.
Herefordshire, .	Hereford, Leominster, Ledbury.
Monmouthshire, .	Monmouth, Chepstow, Abergavenny.
TEN NORTH MIDLAND.	
Nottinghamshire, .	Nottingham, Newark, Mansfield.
Derbyshire, .	Derby, Chesterfield, Buxton, Matlock.
Staffordshire, .	Stafford, Lichfield, Wolverhampton
Worcestershire, .	Worcester, Dudley, Kidderminster, Malvern.
Warwickshire, <sup>5</sup>	Birmingham, Warwick, Coventry, Rugby.
Leicestershire, .	Leicester, Loughborough, Bosworth.
Rutlandshire, <sup>6</sup>	Oakham, Uppingham.
Northamptonshire, .	Northampton, Peterborough.
Huntingdonshire, .	Huntingdon, St. Ives, St. Neot's.
Cambridgeshire, .	Cambridge, Ely, Newmarket.

<sup>1</sup> Northumberland, that is, the land north of the Humber. The Kingdom of Northumberland, during the Heptarchy, extended from the Humber to the Frith of Forth.

<sup>2</sup> Westmoreland, that is, the west moorland.

<sup>3</sup> Formerly Lancastershire. See the note on Cheshire.

<sup>4</sup> Cheshire for Chestershire. Chester derives its name from the Latin term *castra*, an encampment or fortified place. Hence also the frequent terminations in English Towns; as in *Doncaster*, that is, the fortification on the *Don*; *Lancaster*, on the *Lune*; *Exeter* (for *Ececester*) on the *Eax*; *Rochester*, on the rock (*roche*).

<sup>5</sup> Warwick, that is, the town where the munitions of war were kept; the termination *wick* being from the Latin *vicus*, a street or town. Hence *Norwich*, the north town, *Sandwich*, *Alnwick*, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Rutland, that is, red land, for which this shire is still noted.

## TEN SOUTH-MIDLAND.

*Counties.**Principal Towns.*

Gloucestershire, .	Bristol, Cheltenham, Gloucester, Clifton.
Oxfordshire, .	Oxford, Woodstock, Henly, Banbury.
Buckinghamshire, .	Aylesbury, Buckingham, Wycombe, Eton.
Bedfordshire, .	Biggleswade, Bedford, Dunstable.
Hertfordshire, .	Hertford, St. Albans, Ware.
Middlesex, <sup>1</sup> .	London, Westminster, Uxbridge.
Surrey, .	Southwark, Guildford, Kingston.
Berkshire, .	Reading, Windsor, Abingdon.
Wiltshire, .	Salisbury, Devizes, Marlborough.
Somersetshire, .	Bath, Taunton, Bridgewater.

## FOUR EASTERN.

Lincolnshire, .	Boston, Lincoln, Stamford, Gt. Grimsby.
Norfolk, <sup>2</sup> .	Norwich, Yarmouth, Lynn, Diss.
Suffolk, .	Ipswich, Bury St. Edmunds, Sudbury.
Essex, .	Colchester, Chelmsford, Harwich, Epping.

## SIX SOUTHERN.

Kent, .	Canterbury, Maidstone, Dover, Chatham.
Sussex, .	Chichester, Brighton, Lewes, Hastings.
Hampshire, .	Portsmouth, Winchester, Southampton.
Dorsetshire, .	Dorchester, Weymouth, Poole.
Devonshire, .	Exeter, Plymouth, Devonport, Honiton.
Cornwall, .	Launceston, Falmouth, Truro, Penzance.

## THE COUNTIES OF WALES.

## SIX IN NORTH WALES.

Flintshire, .	Holywell, Mold, St. Asaph, Flint.
Denbighshire, .	Wrexham, Denbigh, Ruthin.
Caernarvonshire, .	Caernarvon, Bangor, Conway.
Anglesey, .	Beaumaris, Holyhead, Amlwch.
Merionethshire, .	Dolgelly, Bala, Harlech.
Montgomeryshire, .	Welshpool, Montgomery, Newton.

<sup>1</sup> Middlesex, that is, *Middle Saxons*, with reference to *Essex*, or *East Saxons*; *Sussex*, or *South Saxons*; and *Wessex*, or *West Saxons*. *Wessex*, the name of which no longer remains, though the most powerful kingdom of the Heptarchy, comprised the counties to the west of Middlesex and Sussex, namely, Hampshire, Berkshire, Dorsetshire, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Norfolk, that is, the *north folk* or people, with reference to *Suffolk* which means the *south folk*. *Folk* is evidently from (*vulg.*) *vulgus* the Latin word for *people*.

## SIX IN SOUTH WALES

*Counties.**Principal Towns.*

Radnorshire, . New Radnor, Presteigne.  
 Cardiganshire, . Cardigan, Aberystwith.  
 Pembrokeshire, . Pembroke, Haverfordwest, Milford.  
 Caermarthenshire, Caermarthen, Llanelly.  
 Brecknockshire, . Brecknock or Brecon, Hay.  
 Glamorganshire, . Merthyr Tydvil, Cardiff, Swansea, Llandaff

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The boundaries of England and Wales? Between what parallels does England lie? Between what meridians? Its length and breadth? Its area and population? Is the population increasing? In what proportion? How are England and Wales divided? The six northern counties of England? The four adjoining Wales? The ten North Midland? The ten South Midland? The four Eastern? The six Southern? The six in North Wales? The six in South Wales? Trace each of these counties on the map, and point out the principal towns. The derivations of *Chester*, &c.? Of *Warwick*? What are the other derivations given?

**ISLANDS.**—Anglesey in North Wales; the Isle of Man in the Irish Sea, at nearly equal distances from England, Ireland, and Scotland; the chief towns of which are *Douglas*, *Ramsey*, *Castletown*, and *Peel*. The Isle of Wight, south of Hampshire, remarkable for its fertility and beauty; Guernsey, Jersey, Alderney, and Sark, near the coast of France; Sheppy Island to the north, and Thanet to the north-east of Kent; Coquet, and Holy Island or Lindisfarne, off the coast of Northumberland; the Scilly Isles, south-west of Cornwall; and Lundy Island, in the Bristol Channel.

**SAND BANKS.**—Dogger Bank in the German Ocean, between Yorkshire and Jutland; Goodwin Sands, on the east of Kent.

**CAVES.**—Flamborough Head<sup>1</sup> and Spurn Head in Yorkshire; North and South Forelands, and Dungeness, in

<sup>1</sup> Flamborough Head.—A cliff nearly 500 feet high on which beacon fires used to be kindled; and hence it derived its name (*Flame borough*). It still deserves its name, as it is the site of a modern lighthouse.

Kent; Beachy Head, in Sussex; the Needles, on the west of the Isle of Wight; St. Alban's Head and Portland Point, in Dorsetshire; Start Point, in Devonshire; Lizard Point, and Land's End, in Cornwall; St. David's Head, in Pembrokeshire; Holyhead, in Anglesey; Great Orme's Head, in Denbighshire; St. Bee's Head, in Cumberland.

**BAYS AND ROADSTEADS.**—On the *east* coast, Bridlington Bay; Humber Mouth; the Wash; Yarmouth Roads; Mouth of the Thames; the Nore; the Downs.

On the *south* coast, Spithead; Southampton Bay; Poole Harbour; Torbay; Mount's Bay.

On the *west* coast, Bristol Channel and Mouth of the Severn; Swansea Bay; Caermarthen Bay; Milford Haven; St. Bride's Bay; Cardigan Bay; Caernarvon Bay; Menai Frith; Mouth of the Dee; Morecambe Bay; Solway Frith.

**MOUNTAINS.**—The principal mountains are—the *Cheviot*<sup>1</sup> Hills, between Northumberland and Scotland; the *Cumbrian* range, which extends from the western extremity of the Cheviot Hills to the middle of Derbyshire, through the eastern parts of Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Lancashire, and the western portions of Northumberland, Durham, and Yorkshire. The highest mountains of this range are—Scafell,<sup>2</sup> Skiddaw, Bowfell, Crossfell, Saddleback, in Cumberland; Helvellyn, between Cumberland and Westmoreland; Whernside, Ingleborough, and Pen-y-gant, in Yorkshire; and the Peak in Derbyshire.

The *Cambrian* range extends through the middle of Wales, from north to south, from which several spurs are thrown off, both towards the sea-coast and the English counties adjoining. Its highest summits are Snowdon<sup>3</sup> and Llewellyn in Caernarvonshire; Cader Idris and Arran Fowddy in Merionethshire; Vann or Beacons in Brecknockshire; and Plynlimmon between Montgomery and Cardiganshire.

<sup>1</sup> *Cheviot Hill* is 2,688 feet high.

<sup>2</sup> *Scafell*, which is the highest in the range is 3,166 feet high; *Helvellyn*, 3,055 feet; *Skiddaw*, 3,022 feet; and the others mentioned, between 3,000 and 2,000 feet, except the Peak, which is but 1,018.

<sup>3</sup> *Snowdon* is 3,571 feet high; *Llewellyn* 3,469; and the others nearly 3,000 feet each, except Plynlimmon, which is 2,463.

The *Devonian* range extends from the Bristol to the British Channel, through Devonshire and Cornwall. The highest summits of this range are—Dunkerry Beacon, on Exmoor; Cawsand Hill,<sup>1</sup> Rippon Tor, Butterson, on Dartmoor; and Brown Willy, in Cornwall.

To these may be added the *Malvern Hills* in Worcester; the *Wrekin* in Shropshire; the *Mendip Hills* in Somersetshire; and the *Cotswold Hills* in Gloucestershire.

PRINCIPAL RIVERS.—Rivers flowing into the *German Ocean*:—The Tweed, Tyne, Wear, Tees, Trent, Ouse,<sup>2</sup> Humber, (formed by the Trent, Ouse, and other rivers,) Welland, Witham, Great Ouse, Yare, THAMES, Medway, &c.

Into the *Irish Sea*.—The Mersey, Dee, Ribble, Eden, &c.

Into the *Bristol Channel*.—The Severn, Wye, Avon,<sup>3</sup> &c.

Into the *British Channel*.—South Avon, Wey, Exe,<sup>4</sup> Plym, &c.

LAKES.—Derwent Water, or Keswick Lake, in Cumberland; Ullswater, between Cumberland and Westmoreland; Windermere between Westmoreland and Lancashire; and Coniston Water, in Lancashire.

<sup>1</sup> Cawsand Hill is 1,782 feet high; Dunkerry Beacon, 1,668; Rippon Tor, 1,549; Brown Willy, 1,368; and Butterson, 1,203 feet.

<sup>2</sup> *Ouse*.—This is another form of the word *oese*, which is formed from the French *EAUX*, *waters*, like the term *BEAUX*, which is pronounced similarly, except in its vulgar form *bucks*. This explains why there are so many rivers of this name—as the Yorkshire Ouse, the Great and Little Ouse, and the Sussex Ouse; the term originally signifying the *water* or *waters*; as we say Derwent *water*, the Black *water*, &c.

<sup>3</sup> In the same way, the *Irish* or Celtic word *avon*, which signifies *water* or *river*, came to be the proper name of several rivers; as the Stratford Avon, the Bristol Avon, the Salisbury Avon, and the Avon or *Nen* in Northamptonshire.

<sup>4</sup> From the *Irish* or Celtic, or, which is the same thing, the ancient British word *uisge*, *water*, several rivers derive their names in a similar way; as the *Esk*, the *Exe*, the *Aze*, and the *Usk* in Wales. In Scotland, too, there are several *Esk*s.

In a similar way, the term *don* has been applied to several rivers; as in Russia, to the *Don*, the N. and S. *Duna* or *Dwina*, the Dnieper, (that is, *Donleper*, or *upper river*,) and the Dniester, (*Doniester*, or *lower river*.) The *Doon* and *Deen*, as in *Aberdeen*, are evidently other forms of the same word.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The counties in N. Wales? In S. Wales? Trace them on the map, and point out the principal towns of each. Name, and point out on the map, the principal islands. The principal towns of the Isle of Man? Where is the Dogger Bank? Where the Goodwin Sands? Name and point out the principal capes. What is said of *Flamborough*? The bays on the east coast? On the south? On the west? The principal mountain ranges? Trace them on the map, and point out the highest mountains of each. The highest mountain in England? Its height? Where are the Malvern Hills? The Wrekin? The Mendip Hills? The Cotswold Hills? The rivers which flow into the German Ocean? Into the Irish Sea? Into the British Channel? The meaning of the term *Ouse*? This accounts for? Also of the *Avon*? Trace the principal rivers of England on the map, beginning at the source. Point out the principal towns on each, beginning at the mouth.<sup>1</sup> Name, and point out the principal lakes.

**PRINCIPAL TOWNS.**—*London*, the capital of England, is the largest and richest city in the world. It is upwards of ten miles in length, by seven in breadth; and its buildings cover an area of about sixty square miles. Its population amounts to about three millions; and for trade and commerce, science and literature, wealth and magnificence, it is the first city in the world.

*Liverpool* is next to London in commerce and wealth. It is the great emporium of the American trade, for which it is favourably situated, and to which its importance is principally due. Its docks, which are crowded with shipping, are three miles in length. The other great *shipping* and *commercial* towns are Bristol, Hull, Newcastle-upon-Tyne, Southampton, Sunderland, Stockton, Yarmouth, Falmouth, and Dover.

*Manchester* is the second city for population, and the first for manufactures. It is the great emporium of the cotton trade, for which England is unrivalled. *Birmingham*, celebrated for *metallic* manufactures, is the next in rank. It gives employment, it is said, to about 70,000 men in the manufacture of fire-arms, engines, and machinery, plated ware, watches, cutlery, &c. *Sheffield* is also distinguished for the manufacture of cutlery and plated goods.

<sup>1</sup> Thus, on the *Thames* are Woolwich, Greenwich, Deptford, London, Richmond, Kingston, Windsor, Reading, Oxford, &c.

The other great manufacturing towns are, Preston, Bolton, and Blackburn, noted for *cotton* goods. Leeds, Wakefield, Huddersfield, and Exeter, are distinguished for *woollen* goods; Norwich, Coventry, and Macclesfield, for *silks*; Leicester and Nottingham for *stockings*; Kidderminster for *carpets*; Worcester for *porcelain*; Newcastle-under-Lyne for *pottery*; and Gloucester for *pins*.

Portsmouth, on Portsea Island, is distinguished for its fortifications and fine harbour, which is capable of receiving the whole British navy at once; it is the chief *naval* station of Great Britain. Plymouth, at the mouth of the Plym, with its gigantic *breakwater*, is the second. Devonport, Chatham, Sheerness, Woolwich, and Deptford, are distinguished for their extensive *dock-yards*; and Spithead and the Nore are the principal *roadsteads* of the British navy.

Canterbury and York are distinguished for their great antiquity and magnificent cathedrals; and Oxford and Cambridge for their celebrated universities and architectural beauties, particularly Oxford, which has been called a city of palaces. Windsor is distinguished for its magnificent castle, the ancient and favourite residence of the sovereigns of England. Bath is the most beautiful city in England, and has long been celebrated for its medicinal springs. The other *watering-places* of note are Cheltenham, Leamington, Malvern, Matlock, Buxton, Harrogate, Tunbridge-Wells, and Clifton. And the places chiefly resorted to for *sea-bathing* are Brighton, Ryde in the Isle of Wight, Hastings, Weymouth, Ramsgate, Margate, Scarborough, and Redcar.

Wrexham is the largest town in North Wales, and is noted for its flannels; Caernarvon is celebrated for its castle, in which the first Prince of Wales (Edward II.) was born; Holyhead is the usual port of embarkation for Dublin; and Bangor and Beaumaris are much resorted to for *sea-bathing*. Merthyr-Tydvil is the largest and most important town in Wales.

In South Wales Caermarthen and Pembroke are the most important towns. Cardigan is noted for its lead, and Brecknock for its cloth trade. Milford Haven is noted for its excellent and spacious harbour; and Swansea is much frequented in summer for *sea-bathing*.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What is said of London? What of Liverpool? Of Birmingham? Of Sheffield? The towns noted for the manufacture of cottons? Of woollens? Of silks? Of stockings? Of carpets? Of porcelain? Of pottery? Of pins? What is said of Portsmouth? Of Plymouth? The dock-yards of the British navy? The principal roadsteads? What is said of Canterbury? Of York? Of Oxford and Cambridge? Of Windsor? Of Bath? The other watering-places of note are? The places chiefly resorted to for sea-bathing? What is said of Wrexham? Of Caernarvon? Of Holyhead? Of Bangor and Beaumaris? The most important towns in South Wales? Cardigan is noted for? Brecknock for? Milford Haven for? Swansea for?

**CLIMATE, SURFACE, AND SOIL.**—The *climate* of England, though variable and somewhat humid, particularly in the western parts of the island, is, generally speaking, mild, genial, and salubrious. Its *surface*, except in the northern and western counties, is generally either level, or composed of gently rising hills and sloping valleys; and its *soil*, particularly in the midland, eastern, and southern counties, is distinguished for its fertility and high state of cultivation. In the north, in particular, there are several barren tracts, and in some of the eastern counties there are extensive fens or marshes; but, in general, England is a fertile, rich, and beautifully-wooded country.

The counties most distinguished for **AGRICULTURE** are Kent, Essex, Suffolk, Norfolk, Hampshire, Berkshire, Bedfordshire, Surrey, Sussex, Hertfordshire, part of Lincolnshire, Durham, and Northumberland.

The **MINING** and **MANUFACTURING** districts are in the north and west of the island. The principal mineral productions are, coal, iron, copper, lead, tin, and salt. But **COAL** is by far the most important of the mineral treasures of England. In fact, the manufacturing and commercial wealth of Great Britain is principally due to her inexhaustible supply of coal.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> "It is hardly possible to overrate the advantages Great Britain derives from her vast, and to all practical purposes, inexhaustible supply of coal. In this climate, fuel ranks among the principal necessities of life, and it is to our coal mines that we owe abundant



**ANTIQUITIES AND CURIOSITIES.**—The *antiquities* of England may be classed under four heads, namely, the *British* or *Celtic*, the *Roman*, the *Gothic*, and the *Danish*. The most remarkable of the British antiquities is *Stonehenge*, in Wiltshire, which is supposed to have been a *Druidical temple*; and in Wales, particularly in the isle of Anglesey, there are many other *Druidical* remains. The *Roman* antiquities consist of the remains of encampments and fortifications, military ways, altars, inscriptions, arms, coins, &c. The principal *Gothic* antiquities consist of cathedrals, minsters, (as Westminster and Yorkminster) and other architectural relics; and the *Danish* antiquities consist of the remains of raths, circular camps, &c.

The principal natural *curiosities* are the *Peak* and the *petrifications* in Derbyshire; the *lakes* and scenery of Cumberland, &c.

---

and cheap supplies of so indispensable an article. But this is not the only advantage we derive from our coal mines; they are the principal source of our manufacturing and commercial prosperity. Since the invention of the steam-engine, coal has become of the highest importance as a moving power; and no nation, however favourably situated in other respects, not plentifully supplied with this mineral, need hope to rival those that are, in most branches of manufacturing industry. To what is the astonishing increase of Glasgow, Manchester, Birmingham, Leeds, Sheffield, &c., and the comparatively stationary or declining state of Canterbury, Winchester, Salisbury, and other towns in the south of England to be ascribed? It cannot be pretended, with any show of reason, that the inhabitants of the former are naturally more ingenious, enterprising, or industrious than those of the latter. The abundance and cheapness of coal in the north, and its scarcity and consequent high price in the south, is the real cause of this striking discrepancy. The citizens of Manchester, Glasgow, &c., are able, at a comparatively small expense, to put the most powerful and most complicated machinery in motion, and to produce results quite beyond the reach of those who have not the same command of coal, or as it has been happily defined—hoarded labour. Our coal mines have been sometimes called the *BLACK INDIES*; and it is certain that they have conferred on us a thousand times more real advantage than we derive from the conquest of the Mogul empire, or than we should have reaped from the dominion of Mexico and Peru.”—*M’Culloch*.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What is said of the climate of England? What of the surface? What of the soil? The counties most distinguished for agriculture are? Where are the mining and manufacturing districts? The principal mineral productions of England? Which the most important? How proved? How may the antiquities of England be classed? The *British* antiquities consist of? The most remarkable? The *Roman*, *Saxon*, and *Danish*, consist of? The principal natural curiosities are?

## ENGLAND AND WALES



## REFERENCES TO THE MAP OF ENGLAND AND WALES.

Appleby, . . . 66	Exeter, . . . 17	Newcastle, . . . 62
Bath, . . . 27	Falmouth, . . . 19	Northampton, . . . 41
Beaumaris, . . . 74	Flint, . . . 71	Nottingham, . . . 51
Bedford, . . . 40	Gloucester, . . . 28	Norwich, . . . 37
Birmingham, . . . 46	Harlech, . . . 76	Oakham, . . . 42
Brecon, . . . 82	Halifax, . . . 55	Oxford, . . . 29
Bridgewater, . . . 22	Hereford, . . . 80	Pembroke, . . . 86
Brighton, . . . 8	Hertford, . . . 30	Plymouth, . . . 18
Bristol, . . . 26	Hull, . . . 57	Portsmouth, . . . 10
Cambridge, . . . 34	Huntingdon, . . . 39	Radnor, . . . 79
Canterbury, . . . 3	Ipswich, . . . 33	Reading, . . . 13
Cardiff, . . . 24	Kendal, . . . 67	Ripon, . . . 60
Cardigan, . . . 83	Lancaster, . . . 68	St. Asaph, . . . 72
Carlisle, . . . 65	Launceston, . . . 20	St. David's, . . . 85
Caermarthen, . . . 84	Landaff, . . . 25	Salisbury, . . . 14
Caernarvon, . . . 75	Leeds, . . . 56	Scarborough, . . . 59
Chatham, . . . 2	Leicester, . . . 43	Sheffield, . . . 53
Chelmsford, . . . 31	Lewes, . . . 7	Shrewsbury, . . . 77
Chester, . . . 70	Lichfield, . . . 47	Southampton, . . . 11
Chichester, . . . 9	Lincoln, . . . 52	Stafford, . . . 48
Colchester, . . . 32	Liverpool, . . . 69	Taunton, . . . 21
Coventry, . . . 44	London, . . . 1	Warwick, . . . 45
Denbigh, . . . 73	Lynn, . . . 38	Wells, . . . 23
Derby, . . . 50	Maidstone, . . . 6	Weymouth, . . . 16
Dorchester, . . . 15	Manchester, . . . 54	Winchester, . . . 12
Dover, . . . 5	Margate, . . . 4	Worcester, . . . 49
Durham, . . . 61	Monmouth, . . . 81	Yarmouth, . . . 36
Ely, . . . 35	Montgomery, . . . 78	York, . . . 58

## SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND, which forms the northern portion of the island of Great Britain, is bounded on the south by the Solway Frith, the Cheviot Hills, and the River Tweed, which separate it from England; on the north by the Atlantic Ocean; on the west by the North Channel and Atlantic Ocean; and on the east by the German Ocean.

Scotland lies between  $54^{\circ} 37'$  and  $58^{\circ} 36'$  north latitude, and between  $1^{\circ} 48'$  and  $6^{\circ} 13'$  west longitude. Its

length from Cape Wrath to the Mull of Galloway, is about 280 miles; and its breadth from Buchan Ness to the most westerly point in Rosshire, is nearly 150 miles.<sup>1</sup>

Its AREA is estimated at 26,016 square miles, exclusive of its islands, which are supposed to contain about 4,000 more; and its POPULATION, according to the last census (1861), amounts to 3,061,251, or upwards of three millions.

Scotland is divided into thirty-three counties or shires, which, with their principal towns, are as follow—

## ELEVEN NORTHERN.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.</i>
Orkney and Shetland,	Kirkwall, Lerwick, Stromness.
Caithness, . . .	Wick, Thurso.
Sutherland, . . .	Dornoch.
Ross, . . .	Dingwall, Tain, Fortrose, Stornoway.
Cromarty, . . .	Cromarty.
Inverness, . . .	Inverness, Fort George, Fort Augustus, Fort William, Portree.
Nairn, . . .	Nairn.
Elgin or Murray, . . .	Elgin, Forres.
Banff, . . .	Banff, Cullen.
Aberdeen, . . .	New Aberdeen, Old Aberdeen, Peterhead Fraserburgh.
Kincardine or Mearns,	Stonehaven, Bervie.

## NINE MIDDLE.

Forfar or Angus, . . .	Dundee, Forfar, Montrose, Brechin.
Perth, . . .	Perth, Dunkeld, Dumblane.
Fife, . . .	Cupar, St. Andrews, Dunfermline, Kirkaldy, Kinghorn, Burntisland.
Kinross, . . .	Kinross.
Clackmannan, . . .	Clackmannan, Alloa.
Stirling, . . .	Stirling, Falkirk, Bannockburn.
Dumbarton or Lennox, . . .	Dumbarton, Kirkintilloch, Helensburgh.
Argyll, . . .	Inverary, Campbelltown, Glencoe, Dunoon, Oban.
Bute, . . .	Rothsay, Lamlash.

---

<sup>1</sup> Its breadth between Alloa on the Frith of Forth, and Dumbarton on the Clyde, is only thirty-two miles.

## THIRTEEN SOUTHERN.

*Counties.**Principal Towns.*

Haddington or East-Lothian, Haddington, Dunbar, Preston Pans.  
 Edinburgh or Mid-Lothian, Edinburgh, Leith, Musselburgh,  
 Dalkeith.

Linlithgow or West-Lothian, Linlithgow, Bo'ness,<sup>1</sup> Queensferry.  
 Berwick or Merse, . . . Greenlaw, Dunse, Coldstream.  
 Roxburgh, . . . Jedburgh, Kelso, Hawick, Melrose.  
 Selkirk, . . . Selkirk, Galashiels.  
 Peebles, . . . Peebles, Inverleithen.  
 Lanark, . . . Glasgow, Lanark, Hamilton, Airdree.  
 Renfrew, . . . Renfrew, Paisley, Greenock, Port-  
 Glasgow.

Ayrshire, . . . Ayr, Kilmarnock, Irvine, Girvan.  
 Dumfries, . . . Dumfries, Annan, Moffat.  
 Kirkcudbright, . . . Kirkcudbright, New Galloway.  
 Wigton, . . . Wigton, Stranraer, Portpatrick.

**ISLANDS.**—The *Shetland Islands*, nearly forty in number, the principal of which are Mainland and Yell; the *Orkney Islands*, twenty-six in number, the chief of which are Mainland or Pomona, and Hoy. The *Hebrides*, or *Western Isles*, about three hundred in number, the principal of which are Lewis, North and South Uist, Isle of Skye, Rum, Mull, Jura, Isla, Staffa, Iona or Icolmkill; and, in the Frith of Clyde, Arran and Bute.

**CAPIES.**—Duncansbay Head, and Dunnet Head, in Caithness; Cape Wrath, in Sutherland; Tarbetness, in Cromarty; Kinnaird's Head, in Aberdeenshire; Fifeness, in Fifeshire; St. Abb's Head, in Berwickshire; Burrow Head, and the Mull of Galloway, in Wigtonshire; the Mull of Cantyre, and Ardnamurchan Point, in Argyllshire, &c.

**FRITHS, LOCHS, &c.**—The Friths of Pentland, Dornoch, Cromarty, and Murray, to the north of Scotland; the Friths of Tay and Forth, to the east; the Frith of Clyde, to the west; and the Solway Frith to the south. Wigton Bay, Glenluce Bay, and Loch Ryan; the Minch, between Skye, Lewis, and the mainland. Loch Linnhe, north-west of Argyll; Sound of Mull, Sound of Jura, &c.

<sup>1</sup> Bo'ness is a confirmed corruption of *Borronstownness*.

**MOUNTAINS.**—Scotland, in the north and west, is rugged and mountainous. This part of the country is therefore named the *Highlands*;<sup>1</sup> and the southern and south-east parts of it are called the *Lowlands*.

The principal mountain ranges are, the *Grampian Hills*, which extend from Argyll to Kincardine, dividing the Highlands from the Lowlands; the highest summits of which are, Ben Lawers, Schiehallion, Ben Lomond, and Ben Ledi. The *Cheviot Hills*, between Roxburgh and Northumberland; the *Lammermoor*<sup>2</sup> *Hills*, between Haddington and Berwickshire; and the *Pentland Hills*, in Edinburgh or Mid-Lothian.

*Ben Nevis*,<sup>3</sup> in the south of Inverness, is considered, the highest mountain in Scotland; and *Ben Macdhui*, in the *Cairngorm* group, to the east of the same shire, has been found to be about sixty-eight feet lower.

**RIVERS.**—The principal rivers flowing into the *German Ocean* are, the Tweed, Forth, Tay, North and South Esk, the Dee, and the Don.

Into the *Sohoay Frith*, the Annan, the Nith, and the Esk, in Dumfriesshire; and the Dee, in Kirkcudbrightshire.

Into the *Frith of Clyde*, the Clyde, the Ayr, and the Doon.

Into the *Atlantic*, north of Scotland, the Spey, the Findhorn, and the Deveron.

The Teviot, in Roxburgh, and the Ettrick, in Selkirk, flow into the *Tweed*; and the Earn or Erne into the *Tay*.

**LAKES.**—Lochs Lomond and Katrine, in the south of the Highlands, celebrated for their beautiful and picturesque scenery. Loch Ness and Loch Lochy, in Invernesshire, connected by the great Caledonian Canal, which runs in the direction of these lochs, from Fort William to Fort Augustus. Loch Tay, Loch Earn, and others in Perthshire; Loch Awe, in Argyll; Loch Leven, in Kinross, &c.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Highlands consist of the counties of Sutherland, Ross, Inverness, and Argyll; of the western part of Perthshire; and of the mountainous parts of Murray, Banff, and Aberdeen shires.

<sup>2</sup> *Lammermoor*, that is, the moor that reaches (*à la mer*) to the sea.

<sup>3</sup> Ben Nevis is 4,466 feet high; Cairngorm, 4,063; Ben Lawers, 3,964; Schiehallion, 2,564; Ben Lomond, 2,192; and Ben Ledi, 3,009.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What portion of the island of Great Britain does Scotland form? Its boundaries? Its length and breadth? Its area and population? Into how many counties is it divided? The eleven northern counties? The nine middle? The thirteen southern? Trace them on the map, and point out the chief towns of each. The number of the Shetland Islands? Of the Orkney? Of the Hebrides or Western Isles? Point out on the map the principal islands of each group. Name, and point out on the map, the principal capes. Also, the principal friths, bays, and lochs.

**CLIMATE, SURFACE.**—The climate of Scotland differs from that of England in being several degrees colder. The surface of the country, particularly in the north and west, is rugged, mountainous, and, with the exception of a few fertile valleys, ill adapted for agriculture.

The middle parts of the country, particularly the valleys of the Grampians, afford good pasturage for sheep and black cattle, immense numbers of which are annually driven to be fattened in the rich pastures of England.

In the Lowlands, or south-eastern parts of Scotland, **AGRICULTURE** is much advanced, and the soil is in general fertile. The grains chiefly cultivated are, oats, rye, and barley.

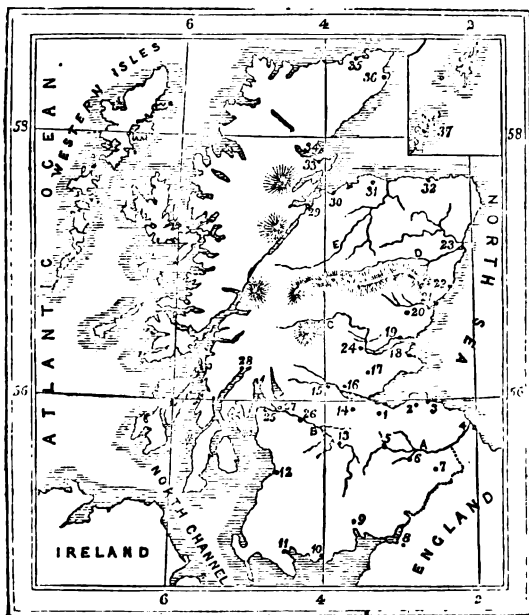
Scotland is rich in minerals, particularly in coal, iron, lead, and copper; and its **MANUFACTURES** and **COMMERCE** are extensive and flourishing. Its chief manufactures are cotton goods, linen, ironware and glass.

**PRINCIPAL TOWNS.**—*Edinburgh*, near the Frith of Forth, is the metropolis of Scotland. It is a beautiful city, and has long been distinguished as the seat of science and literature. It has few manufactures; but it carries on an important trade through *Leith*, its seaport, which is about two miles distant. *Glasgow*, on the Clyde, is the first city in Scotland for population, manufactures, commerce, and wealth. *Greenock* is the principal seaport of Scotland. *Paisley* is noted for its extensive manufactures of cotton and fancy goods. *Aberdeen*, at the mouth of the Dee, is the principal town in the north of Scotland. *Perth* is a large, handsome, and flourishing town. *Dundee*, on the Frith of Tay, is a large and commodious seaport, with an extensive and flourishing trade.

Scotland has five universities—Edinburgh, Glasgow, New Aberdeen, Old Aberdeen, and St. Andrew's.

**ANTIQUITIES AND CURIOSITIES.**—The *antiquities* are the remains of *Druidic* temples and altars; the remains of the great *Roman* wall which ran from the Frith of Clyde to the Frith of Forth; vestiges of Roman roads, camps, &c.; and *Danish* camps and raths. The principal natural *curiosities* are the basaltic columns and the cave of Fingal, in the island of Staffa; the Fall of Fyers, near Loch Ness, and the Falls of the Clyde, near Lanark; and the lakes, which are numerous and beautiful.

### SCOTLAND.





## REFERENCES TO THE MAP OF SCOTLAND.

Aberdeen, . . . 23	Elgin, . . . 31	Linlithgow, . . 14
Ayr, . . . 12	Forfar, . . . 20	Montrose, . . . 21
Banff, . . . 32	Glasgow, . . . 26	Nairn, . . . 30
Bervie, . . . 22	Greenock, . . . 25	Peebles, . . . 5
Berwick, . . . 4	Haddington, . . 2	Perth, . . . 24
Carlisle, . . . 8	Inverary, . . . 28	St. Andrew's, . 18
Clackmannan, . 16	Inverness, . . . 29	Selkirk, . . . 6
Dornoch, . . . 34	Jedburgh, . . . 7	Stirling, . . . 15
Dumbarton, . . 27	Kinross, . . . 17	Tain, . . . 33
Dumfries, . . . 9	Kirkcudbright, . 10	Thurso, . . . 35
Dunbar, . . . 3	Kirkwall, . . . 37	Wick, . . . 36
Dundee, . . . 19	Lanark, . . . 13	Wigton, . . . 11
Edinburgh, . . 1	Leith, . . . 1	

## RIVERS.

A Tweed. | B Clyde. | C Tay. | D Dee. | E Spey.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What is said of the north and west of Scotland? This part of the country is named? The Highlands consist of? The southern and south-east parts of Scotland called? By what range of mountains are the Highlands and Lowlands divided? The other mountain ranges? Trace them on the map, and point out the highest summits of each. The highest mountain in Scotland? Its height? The rivers flowing into the German Ocean? Into the Solway Frith? Into the Frith of Clyde? Into the Atlantic? Into the Tweed? Into the Tay? Trace them on the map, and point out the principal towns on each? Name, and point out on the map, the principal lakes or lochs? What parts of the country are best adapted for pasturage? What for agriculture? The grains chiefly cultivated? What is said of the minerals of Scotland? What of the manufactures and commerce? The chief manufactures are? What is said of Edinburgh? Of Glasgow? Of Greenock? Of Paisley? Of Aberdeen? Of Perth? Of Dundee? The universities of Scotland? How may the antiquities of Scotland be classed? Of what do the *Druidic* antiquities consist? In what direction did the great *Roman* wall run? What other vestiges of *Roman* antiquities remain? Of what do the *Danish* antiquities consist? What are the principal natural curiosities? The lakes most distinguished for their picturesque and beautiful scenery? Point them out on the map.

## IRELAND.

IRELAND lies in the Atlantic Ocean to the west of Great Britain, from which it is separated by St. George's Channel on the south-east; by the Irish Sea on the east; and by the North Channel on the north-east.

Ireland lies between the parallels of  $51\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  and  $55\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  north latitude; and between the meridians of  $5\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  and  $10\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  west longitude.<sup>1</sup>

Its length from Fair Head in Antrim, to Mizen Head in Cork, is about 300 miles; and its breadth from Howth Head, in Dublin, to Slyne Head, in Galway, is about 170 miles.

Its AREA is estimated at nearly 32,000<sup>2</sup> square miles; and its POPULATION, according to the census in 1861, amounts to 5,764,543. (See note, page 71.)

Ireland is divided into four provinces—*Leinster* in the east, *Ulster* in the north, *Munster* in the south, and *Connaught* in the west.

These provinces are subdivided into thirty-two COUNTIES, which, with their principal towns, are as follow:—

## LEINSTER, TWELVE COUNTIES.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.</i>
Louth, .	. Drogheda, Dundalk, Ardee, Carlingford.
Meath, .	. Trim, Navan, Kells.
Westmeath, .	. Mullingar, Athlone, Moate, Kilbeggan.
Longford, .	. Longford, Granard, Edgeworthstown.
Dublin, .	. DUBLIN, Kingstown, Balbriggan,
Kildare, .	. Athy, Kildare, Naas, Maynooth.
King's County, .	. Tullamore, Birr or Parsonstown, Bagnagher, Edenderry, Philipstown.
Queen's County, .	. Maryborough, Portarlington, Mountmellick, Mountrath.
Carlow, .	. Carlow, Tullow, Leighlin.
Wicklow, .	. Wicklow, Arklow, Bray, Enniskerry.
Wexford, .	. Wexford, New Ross, Enniscorthy.
Kilkenny, .	. Kilkenny, Callan, Castlecomer.

<sup>1</sup> Accurately, between  $51^{\circ} 25'$  and  $55^{\circ} 23'$  north latitude, and between  $5^{\circ} 20'$  and  $10^{\circ} 20'$  west longitude.

<sup>2</sup> The estimate is 31,874 square miles, of which 711 are water.

## ULSTER, NINE COUNTIES.

<i>Counties.</i>	<i>Principal Towns.</i>
Donegal, . . .	Ballyshannon, Letterkenny, Lifford.
Derry, . . .	Londonderry, Coleraine, Newtownlimavady, Kilrea.
Antrim, . . .	Belfast, Lisburn, Ballymena, Carrickfergus, Larne, Antrim.
Down, . . .	Newry, Downpatrick; Newtownards, Banbridge, Bangor, Hillsborough, Donaghadee, Dromore, Holywood.
Armagh, . . .	Armagh, Lurgan, Portadown, Tanderagee, Charlemont.
Monaghan, . . .	Monaghan, Clones, Carrickmacross.
Tyrone, . . .	Dungannon, Omagh, Strabane.
Fermanagh, . . .	Enniskillen, Lisnaskea, Tempo.
Cavan, . . .	Cavan, Cootehill, Belturbet, Kingscourt.

## MUNSTER, SIX COUNTIES.

Waterford, . . .	Waterford, Dungarvan, Lismore.
Tipperary, . . .	Clonmel, Cashel, Nenagh, Tipperary.
Clare, . . .	Ennis, Kilrush, Killaloe.
Limerick, . . .	Limerick, Rathkeale, Newcastle.
Cork, . . .	Cork, Bandon, Youghal, Kinsale.
Kerry, . . .	Tralee, Killarney, Dingle.

## CONNUGHT, FIVE COUNTIES.

Roscommon, . . .	Boyle, Roscommon, Elphin.
Leitrim, . . .	Carrick-on-Shannon, Manorhamilton.
Sligo, . . .	Sligo, Ballymote, Collooney.
Mayo, . . .	Castlebar, Ballina, Westport, Killala.
Galway, . . .	Galway, Tuam, Loughrea, Ballinasloe.

**ISLANDS.**—Rathlin, north of Antrim; Tory Island and North Isles of Arran, west of Donegal; Achil Island, Clare Island, and Innisbofin, west of Mayo; South Isles of Arran in Galway Bay; Valentia Island, west of Kerry; Cape Clear Island, south of Cork.

**CAVES.**—Fair Head and Bengore Head, north of Antrim; Malin Head, north of Donegal; Urris Head in Mayo; Slyne Head, in Galway; Loop Head, in Clare; Mizzen Head, in Cork; Cape Clear, in the Island of Cape Clear; Carnsore Point, in Wexford; Wicklow Head; and Howth Head.

**BAYS, LOUGHS.**—Dublin Bay, Dundalk Bay, Carlingford Bay, Dundrum Bay, Strangford Lough, Carrickfergus

Bay or Belfast Lough, Lough Foyle, Lough Swilly, Donegal Bay, Sligo Bay, Killala Bay, Broad Haven, Blacksod Bay, Clew Bay, Galway Bay, Mouth of the Shannon, Tralee Bay, Dingle Bay, Kenmare River, Bantry Bay, Kinsale Harbour, Cork Harbour, Dungarvan Bay, Waterford Harbour, Wexford Harbour.

**MOUNTAINS.**—Compared with Scotland, and the north and west of England, Ireland may be said to be a level country. Its surface, however, is much diversified; and even where it is quite flat, the prospect is generally bounded by hills or mountains in the distance.

The principal mountains in Ireland are—Macgillicuddy's Reeks<sup>1</sup> and Mangerton in Kerry; Croagh Patrick and Nephin in Mayo; the Mourne Mountains in Down; the Wicklow Mountains in Wicklow;<sup>2</sup> and the Devil's Bit and Slieve Bloom Mountains, in Tipperary, King and Queen's Counties.

**RIVERS.**—The Shannon, one of the largest and most important rivers in the United Kingdom, the Barrow, the Blackwater, the Bann, the Suir, the Nore, the Liffey, the Boyne, the Slaney, the Derg, the Foyle, the Lee, the Bandon, the Lagan, the Avoca, &c.

**LAKES.**—Lough Neagh, Lough Erne, Loughs Allen, Ree, and Derg, expansions of the Shannon; Lough Corrib, in Galway; Lough Mask, in the south, and Lough Conn in the west of Mayo; and the Lakes of Killarney, in Kerry, celebrated for the picturesque beauty of their scenery.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION:

How is Ireland bounded? Between what parallels does it lie? Between what meridians? Its length and breadth? Its area and population? How is Ireland divided and subdivided? How many counties in Leinster? In Ulster? In Munster? In Connaught? Trace them on the map and point out the principal towns of each? How many maritime counties in each province? Name, in regular order, all the counties in Ireland which touch the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Carn Twal* in Macgillicuddy's Reeks, the highest mountain in Ireland, has an elevation of 3,410 feet.

<sup>2</sup> *Lugnaquilla*, the highest of the Wicklow Mountains, is about 3,000 feet; and *Slieve Donard*, the highest of the Mourne Mountains, is about 2,660 feet.

sea-coast. Name and point out on the map the principal islands and capes. Also the principal bays and loughs? What is said of the surface of Ireland? The principal mountains? Point them out on the map? The highest mountain in Ireland? Its height? Name and point out on the map the principal rivers and lakes.

**CLIMATE, SOIL.**—The climate of Ireland is mild, genial, and salubrious; but its great defect is excess of humidity, which arises from its insular position, and the prevalence of *westerly* winds. The excellent pasturage and beautiful verdure<sup>1</sup> for which Ireland is so remarkable, are owing principally to the moisture it receives from the vapours of the Atlantic. The soil is in general more fertile than that of England, but not so well cultivated.

**AGRICULTURE.**—Great improvements in agriculture have been made in Ireland within the last few years, and societies for the further improvement of it are extending over the country.

**COMMERCE.**—Ireland possesses many natural advantages for commerce. Its harbours are numerous and commodious, and its coasts are so indented on all sides, that there is scarcely any place in the country more than fifty miles from the sea. The principal exports of Ireland are cattle, corn, beef, butter, pigs, bacon, hides; also linen, yarn, and flax; copper and lead ore, &c. The principal manufacture is linen, which is chiefly confined to the north. Dublin is distinguished for its beautiful tabinets, and Limerick for its lace.

**PRINCIPAL TOWNS.**—*Dublin*, the metropolis of Ireland, is the second city in the British Isles in extent and importance. It is considered one of the most beautiful cities in Europe. The elegance of its buildings, the beauty of its bay, and the picturesque scenery of the surrounding country, are greatly and justly admired.

*Belfast*, the most flourishing, and the most literary town in Ireland, is the next in importance. It is the chief seat of the linen manufacture, and its commerce is most extensive.

*Cork*, the second city in Ireland, is distinguished for its fine harbour and extensive commerce.

---

<sup>1</sup> Hence the poetical name of Ireland, the *Green* or *Emerald* Isle.

*Limerick*, on the Shannon, is usually considered the third city in Ireland. It is of great antiquity, and is celebrated for its manufacture of lace.

*Waterford*, *Londonderry*, *Newry*, *Drogheda*, *Galway*, and *Sligo*, are important seaports; and *Kilkenny* and *Armagh* are the chief inland cities of Ireland.

## POPULATION OF THE BOROUGH TOWNS IN IRELAND.

Name.	County.	Population in 1881.
Armagh, . . . . .	Armagh, . . . . .	8,933
Athlone, . . . . .	W. Meath & Roscom., . . . . .	6,170
Bandon, . . . . .	Cork, . . . . .	6,332
Belfast,* <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	Antrim, . . . . .	119,242
Carlow, . . . . .	Carlow, . . . . .	8,967
Carrickfergus (Co. & Town of), . . . . .	Antrim, . . . . .	9,398
Cashel, . . . . .	Tipperary, . . . . .	5,596
Cloamell, . . . . .	Tipperary, . . . . .	11,190
Coleraine, . . . . .	Londonderry, . . . . .	6,208
Cork,* . . . . .	Cork, . . . . .	101,534
Downpatrick, . . . . .	Down, . . . . .	4,810
Drogheda, . . . . .	Louth, . . . . .	18,094
Dublin,* . . . . .	Dublin, . . . . .	258,328
Dundalk, . . . . .	Louth, . . . . .	10,404
Dungannon, . . . . .	Tyrone, . . . . .	3,886
Dungarvan, . . . . .	Waterford, . . . . .	8,614
Ennis, . . . . .	Clare, . . . . .	7,127
Enniskillen, . . . . .	Fermanagh, . . . . .	5,701
Galway,* . . . . .	Galway, . . . . .	24,990
Kilkenny, . . . . .	Kilkenny, . . . . .	17,441
Kinsale, . . . . .	Cork, . . . . .	4,624
Limerick,* . . . . .	Limerick, . . . . .	55,234
Lisburn, . . . . .	Antrim, . . . . .	9,653
Londonderry, . . . . .	Londonderry, . . . . .	20,493
Mallow, . . . . .	Cork, . . . . .	4,824
New Ross, . . . . .	Wexford, . . . . .	7,115
Newry, . . . . .	Down, . . . . .	12,334
Portarlington, . . . . .	Queen's, . . . . .	2,679
Sligo, . . . . .	Sligo, . . . . .	13,361
Tralee, . . . . .	Kerry, . . . . .	10,921
Waterford,* . . . . .	Waterford, . . . . .	29,160
Wexford, . . . . .	Wexford, . . . . .	12,015
Youghal, . . . . .	Cork, . . . . .	6,749

<sup>1</sup> The towns marked with an asterisk return two members each; and Dublin, four, but two are for the University. All the other towns return one representative each.

**EDUCATION.**—Trinity College, Dublin; Queen's Colleges, Belfast, Cork, and Galway, which have been recently formed into a University; St. Patrick's College, Maynooth; and the "Catholic University," Dublin. There are also several Diocesan and Royal Schools, and numerous Schools for the education of the middle and lower classes.

**ANTIQUITIES AND CURIOSITIES.**—The principal *antiquities* are the *round towers*, Druidic altars and the remains of Danish raths or circular intrenchments. The principal natural *curiosities* are the Giant's Causeway in the northern extremity of the County of Antrim, the scenery of Wicklow, and the Lakes of Killarney.

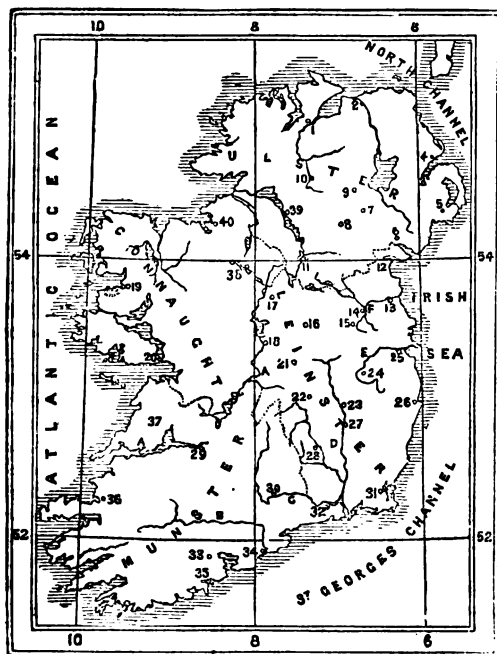
#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

What is said of the climate and soil of Ireland? The poetical name of Ireland? Why so called? What is said of the agriculture of Ireland? What of the commerce? What is said of Dublin? Of Cork? Of Belfast? Of Limerick? Of Waterford &c.? The borough towns in Ireland? What are the principal institutions for education in Ireland? The principal antiquities of Ireland are? The great natural curiosities?

#### REFERENCES TO THE MAP OF IRELAND.

Armagh, . . . 7	Dundalk, . . . 12	Naas, . . . 24
Athlone, . . . 18	Drogheda, . . . 13	Navan, . . . 14
Belfast, . . . 3	Ennis, . . . 37	Newry, . . . 6
Carlow, . . . 27	Enniskillen, . . . 39	Omagh, . . . 10
Carrickfergus, . . . 4	Galway, . . . 20	Sligo, . . . 40
Cavan, . . . 11	Kilkenny, . . . 28	Tralee, . . . 36
Carrick-on-Shan, . . . 38	Kinsale, . . . 35	Trim, . . . 15
Clonmel, . . . 30	Limerick, . . . 29	Tullamore, . . . 21
Coleraine, . . . 2	Londonderry, . . . 1	Waterford, . . . 32
Cork, . . . 33	Longford, . . . 17	Westport, . . . 19
Downpatrick . . . 5	Maryborough, . . . 22	Wexford, . . . 31
Dublin, . . . 25	Monaghan, . . . 8	Wicklow, . . . 26
Dungannon, . . . 9	Mullingar, . . . 16	Youghal, . . . 34

## IRELAND.



## REFERENCES TO RIVERS.

- |                   |               |               |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|
| A The Shannon.    | C The Suir.   | E The Liffey. |
| B The Blackwater. | D The Barrow. | F The Boyne.  |



## HISTORICAL SKETCH OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

---

ENGLAND was originally peopled by the ancient CELTS, who, migrating from Asia in the earliest ages of the world, gradually spread over the *south* and *west* of Europe, and the adjoining islands.

At subsequent periods the eastern and southern coasts were occupied by the *Belgæ* and other GOTHIC tribes, who also originally migrated from Asia, the cradle of the human race, and spread over the *north* and *north-west* of Europe.

The *Phœnicians* traded with the inhabitants of Cornwall for tin<sup>1</sup> several centuries before the Christian era; but little was known of the country till the invasion of it by the ROMANS, under Julius Cæsar. This event occurred in the fifty-fifth year before the Christian era.

At this period its inhabitants had made little progress in civilization. They had nothing deserving the name of city or town; their dwellings were mere hovels; and their clothing was the skins of animals. The parts of their bodies which were exposed they *painted* or stained with the juice of herbs, from which custom it is said they were called *Britons*, and the country *Britannia*, that is, the *painted nation*.<sup>2</sup> They were, however, a brave and warlike people; and it was not without difficulty that the victorious legions of Cæsar reduced

---

<sup>1</sup> Hence the term *Cassiterides* or *Tin* islands, which was afterwards restricted to the Scilly Isles.

<sup>2</sup> The *Picts*, according to some authors, derived their name from the same custom, which is indeed common to most barbarous nations. The term *Scor*, evidently another form of the word *scout*, was perhaps originally applied to the predatory bands from Scandinavia, who were so frequent and so sudden in their incursions upon the coasts of Ireland and Scotland.

them to submission. After the time of Cæsar, Britain remained unmolested by the Romans for nearly a hundred years. In the year 43, after the Christian era, an expedition was despatched by the Emperor Claudius to complete the conquest of the country, which was finally effected in about twenty years after by the celebrated Roman general, Agricola.

The Romans continued to keep possession of the country till about the year 430, at which period they were obliged to withdraw all their troops from the out provinces for the defence of Italy against the *barbarous nations of the north*.

Under the Romans the arts of peace were introduced into Britain, and the natives rapidly advanced in civilization; but they entirely lost the martial spirit and love of freedom for which their ancestors were so distinguished. Hence, on the departure of the Romans, the Britons became an easy prey to their rude and rapacious neighbours, the Picts and the Scots. Having in vain besought the Romans to return, they solicited the SAXONS, a warlike people of northern Germany, to fight their battles against the Picts and the Scots, offering them as a reward for their services the Isle of Thanet, which forms a part of the county of Kent.<sup>1</sup>

The SAXONS, under Hengist and Horsa, arrived in Britain in the year 449; and having repelled without difficulty the Picts and Scots, they turned their arms against the Britons themselves, whom they dispossessed of the south-eastern part of the island. The success which attended the arms of the Saxons, and the favourable accounts of the beauty and fertility of the country, attracted numerous bands of their countrymen; and

---

<sup>1</sup> The Isle of Thanet is separated from Kent by a narrow channel, formed by the river Stour. In it are the towns of Margate, Ramsgate, and several villages.

with them a kindred tribe called **ANGLES** or **Anglo-Saxons**, who it is supposed occupied that part of Germany between the Elbe and the Eyder. It was from this tribe that the country was afterwards called **ENGLAND**, that is *Angle land* or land of the Angles. The Saxons, Jutes, and Angles, having destroyed, enslaved, or expelled the inhabitants, particularly of the south-eastern and eastern parts of the country, established *seven* independent *kingdoms* since known by the name of the **SAXON HEPTARCHY**.

The Britons that escaped from the slaughter or subjugation of the Saxons, took refuge either in Cornwall or Wales, or passed over into Armorica, in France, where they settled in great numbers among a kindred people, and gave their name to the province of *Bretagne* or *Brittany*. The Britons that settled in Wales maintained their independence till the time of Edward I.; and their descendants are to this day called the *Ancient Britons*.

Under the Saxons the customs and manners of the country were changed, as well as its name; and the language, which had been either Celtic or Latin, gave way to the Anglo-Saxon, from which the modern English is principally derived.

In the year 827 the several kingdoms of the Heptarchy were united into one, under the name of **ENGLAND**, by Egbert king of Wessex or the *West Saxons*. Egbert was therefore the first king of England.

About the year 866 the **DANES** invaded England, and took possession of the country north of the Humber; and in 1017 they were in possession of the whole kingdom, under Canute the Great, king of Denmark and Norway. But during the reign of Alfred the Great, from 871 to 901, the Danes were kept in check, and for a time expelled from the country.

On the death of Hardicanute, the son of Canute, in 1042, the Saxon monarchy was restored in the person

of Edward the Confessor. Upon this monarch's death, in 1066, Harold, brother of the queen, usurped the crown; but in the same year he was defeated and slain at the battle of Hastings, by William Duke of Normandy, who claimed the kingdom under the will of Edward the Confessor. This event is known by the name of the **NORMAN CONQUEST**; and the Duke of Normandy, who was crowned immediately after as king of England, is called William the Conqueror. Under the Normans great changes were made in the customs, laws, and language of England.

The most important events in English history that have since taken place, are :—

1. The annexation of Ireland to England in the reign of Henry II. in 1172.

2. The granting of Magna Charta by John in the year 1215.

3. The invasions of France by Edward III. and Henry V.

4. The wars between the houses of York and Lancaster in the fifteenth century.

5. The union of the crowns of England and Scotland under James I. in 1603.

6. The great civil war in the reign of Charles I.; and the establishment of the Commonwealth under Cromwell in 1649.

7. The Restoration under Charles II. in 1660.

8. The Revolution and abdication of James II. 1688.

9. The Legislative Union between England and Scotland in 1707.

10. The accession of the house of Hanover in 1714.

11. The war with our American Colonies, 1776–1784.

12. The wars arising from the French Revolution, 1793–1815.

13. The Legislative Union between Great Britain and Ireland, 1801.

**SOVEREIGNS OF ENGLAND SINCE THE NORMAN CONQUEST,  
WITH THE TIMES AT WHICH THEY BEGAN TO REIGN.**

William I.	1066	} 11th century.	Henry VIII.	1509	} 16th century.
William II.	1087		Edward VI.	1547	
Henry I.	1100		Mary I.	1553	
Stephen	1135	} 12th century.	Elizabeth	1558	} 17th century.
Henry II.	1154		James I.	1603	
Richard I.	1189		Charles I.	1625	
John	1199	} 13th century.	Charles II.	1660	} 17th century.
Henry III.	1216		James II.	1685	
Edward I.	1272		William III.	1689	
Edward II.	1307	} 14th century.	Mary II.	1689	} 18th century.
Edward III.	1327		Anne	1702	
Richard II.	1377		George I.	1714	
Henry IV.	1399	} 15th century.	George II.	1727	} 18th century.
Henry V.	1413		George III.	1760	
Henry VI.	1422		George IV.	1820	} 19th century.
Edward IV.	1461	} 15th century.	William IV.	1830	
Edward V.	1483		VICTORIA	1837	
Richard III.	1483				
Henry VII.	1485				

**QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.**

England was originally peopled by? The *Celts* came from? At what period? Over what parts of Europe did they gradually spread? The eastern and southern shores of England were subsequently occupied by? Over what part of Europe did the *Gothic* migrations spread? What is said of the *Phœnicians*? The meaning of the term *Cassiterides*? To whom are we indebted for the first *historical* account of England? The date of the first *Roman* invasion? In what state did *Cæsar* find the inhabitants of England? The description given of them? How does it appear that they were a brave and warlike people? The probable meanings of the terms *Briton*, *Pict*, and *Scot*? Did the Romans retain possession of England after the invasion of *Julius Cæsar*? The date of the second invasion? In whose reign? By what celebrated Roman General was the conquest of the country finally effected, and when? How long did the Romans keep possession of England? What obliged them to withdraw from it? What effects were produced by the occupation of England by the Romans with regard to civilization? With regard to the character of the people? How is this shown? When did the *Saxons* arrive in England? Who were their leaders? What were they

promised for their services? Where is it, and how is it formed? Were they satisfied with the promised reward? How does this appear? What part of the island did they seize upon? Who were the *Angles* or *Anglo-Saxons*? What part of Germany did they come from? The meaning of the term *England*? What other Saxon tribe is mentioned? How many separate kingdoms did they establish in England, and under what general name? What became of the Britons that escaped? Where is *Bretagne* or *Brittany*, and why so called? To whose reign did the *Ancient Britons* retain their independence? What changes took place in England under the Saxons? When were the several kingdoms of the Heptarchy united into one? Under what name? Who was the first king of England? The date of the *Danish* invasion? What part of the country did they take possession of? At what period, and under whom, were they in possession of the whole kingdom? During whose reign were they kept in check? At what period was that? When was the Saxon monarchy restored, and in whose person? Who was Harold? By whom was he defeated and slain? What claim had William the Conqueror to the crown of England? What great changes took place in England in consequence of the Norman Conquest? The most important events in English history since? The sovereigns of England since the Norman Conquest?

## SCOTLAND.

Scotland, like England, was originally peopled by the ancient *Celts*. As in England, too, the primitive inhabitants were in process of time driven to the *western* or *mountainous* part of the country by Saxon and other *Gothic* tribes, who possessed themselves of the *Lowlands* or south-eastern part of the island. Hence the difference which still exists between the inhabitants of the Highlands and those of the Lowlands of Scotland. Hence, too, the *Highland* Scotch are called *Gaels*,<sup>1</sup> and their country, the Land of the *Gael*; just

<sup>1</sup> The terms *Gael*, *Gaul*, *Wales* and *wall*, as in *Cornwall*, are evidently different forms of the ancient Celtic word, *gal*, the meaning of which seems to be *west* or *westward*. Thus *Gaul* (the ancient name of France) is in the west of Europe; *Wales* (*Galles* in French) is in the west of England; and *Gael* in the west of Scotland. Hence, also, *Portugal*, the *western* port; *Galway* (and *Galloway*), the *western* direction (as *Norway* is the *northern*); *Donegal*, &c.

as those parts of England to which the ancient British retired were called *Wales* and *Cornwall*.

The ancient name of Scotland was *Caledonia*. By the Romans, who invaded it under Agricola in the year 79, it was called *Britannia Barbāra*; in the eighth century it was called the country of the Picts;<sup>1</sup> and in the eleventh century it received its present name—*SCOTLAND*, which had been previously applied to Ireland.

The Picts and Scots<sup>2</sup> were united into one nation about the year 843, by Kenneth Mac Alpin. His successors were chiefly employed in wars against the English and Danes. Duncan expelled the Danes from his dominion; but, in 1038, he was murdered by Macbeth, who was himself slain two years after by Macduff.

The most important events in the history of Scotland are the wars with the first three Edwards of England, in which BRUCE and WALLACE were so distinguished for their patriotism and heroic deeds. The life and times of the beautiful but unfortunate Queen of Scots, Mary Stuart, is an interesting period in Scottish history; and the accession of her son James to the throne of England, was an event of the greatest importance to both nations. This occurred in 1603; and since that period the two kingdoms have been under one sovereign. In 1707 the Legislative Union between Great Britain and Scotland was effected; and the two countries have since been called GREAT BRITAIN.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

How was Scotland originally peopled? To what part of the country were the ancient *Celtic* inhabitants driven in process of time, and by whom? What is said of the *Highlands* and *Lowlands*? What comparison is made between *Wales* and *Cornwall* in England, and the *Highlands* of Scotland? The ancient names

<sup>1</sup> The similarity which still exists between the *Welsh* and *Gaelic* languages proves that they were originally the same; and it is well known that the Gaelic differs very little from the *Irish*, from which circumstance it is frequently called *Erse*, that is, *Irish*.

<sup>2</sup> The *Picts* and the *Scots* were of Scandinavian origin.

of Scotland? By the Romans it was called? In the eighth century it was called? And in the eleventh? To what country was the name *Scotland* previously applied? When, and by whom were the Picts and Scots united into one nation? His successors were principally engaged in waging war against whom? By whom were the Danes expelled? What became of him? The most important events in Scottish history?

#### IRELAND.

Ireland, like the sister kingdoms, England and Scotland, was originally peopled by the ancient CELTS; and like them, too, its coasts, though in a less degree, were at subsequent periods taken possession of by the GOTHIC tribes. Its ancient name was *Ierne*,<sup>1</sup> which means, according to some authorities, the *sacred isle*; according to others the *western*. It was called *Juvena*, *Hibernia*, and *Britannia Minor* by the Romans; and subsequently, *Scotia* or Scotland. In the eleventh century this term was transferred to Scotland, and Ireland resumed its ancient name.

Ireland was probably visited by the PHOENICIANS in their voyages to England for tin; but little is *historically* known of it for several centuries after the Christian era.

In the fifth century Christianity was introduced into Ireland by St. Patrick, and it soon after became distinguished as the seat of learning, and so continued for several centuries.

The country suffered much from the invasion of the Danes; and in 845 they were in possession of almost the whole kingdom. They were, however, soon after defeated and expelled.

In the reign of Henry II. in 1172, Ireland was annexed to the English crown.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ierne*. Hence its modern names ERIN and IRELAND, which is evidently a contraction of *Ierne*land. From *Ierne* the names *Juvena* and *Hibernia* also may be easily deduced.



In the reign of James I. several colonies from England and Scotland were introduced into Ireland; and great improvements were made in the laws and in the administration of justice.

In 1641 Ireland, as well as England, was involved in a civil war, which was terminated by Cromwell.

In 1801 the Legislative Union between Ireland and Great Britain was effected; and, in 1829, the Emancipation Bill was passed, which relieved the Roman Catholics of the United Kingdom from the disabilities under which they laboured on account of their religion.

In 1847 there was a great famine, caused by the almost entire failure of the potato crop. Since that distressing period, Ireland has improved in every respect. To this desirable result many causes have contributed; such as emigration to the Colonies, the operation of the Incumbered Estates Court, the spread of education, and the diminution of crimes and outrages.

In 1849 Queen Victoria visited Ireland, to the great delight of all classes of Her Majesty's Irish subjects.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

How was Ireland originally peopled? By what other tribes were its coasts taken possession of at subsequent periods? Why in a less degree than the coasts of England and Scotland? The ancient name of Ireland? The other names applied to Ireland, and the meaning of each? When was it first called, and when did it cease to be called *Scotia*? The meaning of the term *Erse*? What does this prove? What is said of the *Phœnicians* with regard to Ireland? The first *historical* account of Ireland dates from? By whom was Christianity introduced into Ireland, and when? What did Ireland become distinguished for? What is said of the *Danish* invasions? When were they in possession of the whole kingdom? When was Ireland annexed to England? In the reign of James I. what great improvements were effected? Was Ireland involved in the great civil war in 1641? By whom was it terminated? When was the Legislative Union between Ireland and Great Britain effected?

GENERALIZATION OF THE CLIMATES AND PRODUCTIONS  
OF THE EARTH.

INSTEAD of obliging children to learn the climates and productions of every country in the world *separately*, which even if they could, it would be impossible for them to recollect, it is much better to begin by giving them general views of the principal productions of the GREAT DIVISIONS OR ZONES, into which the earth's surface has been divided. In this way, the knowledge of a few general principles will enable them to form tolerably correct ideas of the climate and productions of every country in the world, by merely knowing the *division* or *zone* in which it is situated.

With this view the earth may be divided into SEVEN great CLIMATES or regions, namely, the *Equatorial*, the *Tropical*, the *Warm*, the *Temperate*, the *Cold*, the *Frozen*, and the *Polar* regions. The *isothermal* lines described in the Fifth Chapter,<sup>1</sup> will enable the pupils to trace the general boundaries of each of these great divisions of the earth. They should, therefore, make themselves perfectly acquainted with the general direction of each of these *lines*, and with the principal productions which characterize each *zone* or *division*. It is stated in the chapter referred to, that the *Equatorial* region extends about twenty degrees on each side of the equator, and that the most delicate spices, as cinnamon, cloves, nutmeg, and pepper, are confined to this great band of the earth. It has therefore been designated as the region of the *spices*. In like manner, the other great divisions of the earth have been designated from the principal productions by which they are characterized; as the region of the *sugar-cane* and *coffee-tree*; the region of the *fig* and *olive*; the region of the *wine-grape*; the region of the *oak* and *wheat*; the region of the *fir*, *pine*, and *birch*; and the region of *alpine shrubs*, *lichens*, and *mosses*.

It is not to be supposed that the plants and vegetables here specified, are confined to the regions which have

---

<sup>1</sup> Of "GEOGRAPHY GENERALISED," to which this work is an Introduction.

been called by their names; still less that these are the only productions which are found in perfection in those parts of the earth. Every plant, in addition to a genial soil, requires a certain degree of temperature to bring it to maturity; and in every part of the world in which vegetables find a soil and climate suitable to their nature, there we are to expect them in the greatest perfection.

We shall now enumerate a few of the other vegetable productions by which the principal zones are characterized.

The *Equatorial* division of the earth, in addition to the finest spices, by which it is particularly characterized, produces in the greatest perfection, aromatic and medicinal gums, balsams, and juices; also myrrh, frankincense, camphor, and cassia. The guava,<sup>1</sup> banana, tamarind, pine apple, and other delicious fruits abound in those regions. The bread-fruit tree, the plantain, the sago, and other species of the palm-tree; and the yam, cas'savi, manioc, and arrow-root, serve as substitutes for wheat, oats, barley, and rye, which could not be grown in those regions, except in elevated and mountainous districts.

Rice, and maize or Indian corn, are natives of hot climates, and hence they are produced in great abundance in the equatorial and tropical regions where the soil is suitable.

In the forests of those regions are found the hardest, most durable, and most beautiful kinds of timber, as iron-wood, teak, ebony, mahogany, sandal-wood, rose-wood, &c.

In the *Tropical* regions are found, with the exception of the finest spices, all the plants and productions of the equatorial zone. And here in the greatest perfection are found the *sugar-cane*, *coffee*, *cocoa-nut*, and all the other species of the palm-tree.

The orange, lemon, and citron, are found here with the most delicious flavour.

Indian corn or maize, and rice, are produced in great abundance in tropical climates; also cotton, tobacco, indigo, drugs, and dye-woods.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced *gwá'-sa*; as *sua* in *suavine*.

In the *Warm* regions, the olive and fig are found in the greatest perfection; and towards the tropical borders, the orange and lemon. Almonds, peaches, apricots, flourish here; also the mulberry, so essential to the production of silk; and the vine, from which the choicest wines are produced. Wheat, too, is produced in great perfection here, particularly towards the temperate borders.

The cork-tree, drugs, barilla, shumac, dried fruits, are products of those regions.

In the *Temperate* regions, the different kinds of grain are produced in great perfection; also the oak, beech, maple, and other trees valuable for timber.

Towards the borders of the warm regions, grapes, almonds, peaches, and apricots are produced in perfection; also plums, cherries, apples, and pears, particularly towards the borders of the next great division.

The principal vegetable productions of the *Cold* regions, are *pine* and *fir* timber, oats, barley, and rye. The fruits are apples, pears, nuts, gooseberries, strawberries, &c.

In the *Frozen* and *Polar* regions, there is scarcely any vegetation; but from those parts of the world we obtain valuable *animal* productions, as whalebone, train-oil, and the *furs* of commerce.

The following TABLE, which exhibits at one view, the chief productions and EXPORTS of the principal countries in the world, illustrates the GENERAL PRINCIPLES just laid down :—

<i>Countries.</i>	<i>Exports.</i>
Asiatic Islands, .	Cinnamon, cloves, nutmegs, pepper, ginger.
Hindustan, .	Cotton goods, silk, sugar, coffee, pepper, indigo, rice, lac-dye, saltpetre, precious stones.
Birman Empire, .	Teak timber, rice, indigo, gums, drugs, palm sugar, cotton goods, silk, varnish.
China, .	Tea, silk, cotton goods, porcelain, lacquered ware, gums, paper, drugs.
Japan,	Silks and cotton goods, drugs, spices, varnish, porcelain, rice, cedar.
Persia,	Silks, carpets, cotton goods, shawls, stuffs, sugar, rice, dried fruits, leather, drugs, tobacco.

<i>Countries.</i>	<i>Exports.</i>
Arabia, . . .	Coffee, aloes, gums, myrrh, frankincense perfumes, drugs.
Africa, . . .	Palm-oil, teak-timber, aloes, dye-woods, ostrich feathers, ivory, gold, sugar (from the Mauritius).
Turkey in Asia, .	Coffee, carpets, silks, fruits, drugs, opium.
West Indies, . .	Sugar, coffee, rum, molasses, cotton, pimento, ginger, logwood, mahogany, cocoa, cochineal, cigars.
Mexico, . . .	Silver and gold.
Caracas, . . .	Cocoa, coffee, indigo, tobacco.
Guiana, . . .	Sugar, rum, cotton, coffee, tobacco, indigo, cayenne-pepper.
Brazil, . . .	Cotton, sugar, coffee, tobacco, dye-woods, drugs from the northern provinces; gold and diamonds from the middle, and wheat, hides, and tallow from the southern.
Buenos Ayres, .	Gold and silver, hides, beef, tallow.
Peru, . . .	Silver and gold.
Chill, . . .	Silver, gold, and copper from the northern provinces, wheat and hemp from the southern.
Morocco, . . .	Leather, goat-skins, gums, fruits.
Algiers and Tripoli,	Ostrich feathers, dates, wax, wool.
Egypt, . . .	Cotton, indigo, drugs, fruits, rice.
Madeira Islands, .	Wine, fruits.
Canary Islands, .	Wine, fruits, silk, barilla.
Turkey and Greece,	Figs, raisins, currants, raw silk, oil.
United States :	
Southern States,	Cotton, tobacco, rice.
Middle States, .	Wheat, flour, and from Maryland, tobacco.
Northern States,	Timber, fish, beef, pork, pot and pearl ashes.
Spain and Portugal,	Olive-oil, wines, raisins, and other dried fruits, lemons, oranges.
Italy, . . .	Thrown silk, olive-oil, currants, lemons, oranges, wine, barilla, shumac, cheese, straw-hats.
France, . . .	Wine, brandy, silk, (raw and manufactured,) gloves, madder, fruits.
Germany, . . .	Wool, corn, wines, linens, clover and rape seeds, wooden clocks.
Netherlands, . .	Finelinen, lace, butter, cheese, corn, madder, geneva, flax, seeds, toys.

<i>Countries.</i>	<i>Exports.</i>
Great Britain,	Cottons, woollens, linens, hardware, salt, coal, earthenware, glass, machinery, fire-arms.
Ireland, .	Cattle, corn, linen, beef, bacon, butter, hides.
Prussia, .	Corn, timber, flax, bark.
Denmark,	Corn, rape-seed, fish, hogs.
Sweden, .	Timber, iron, bark.
Norway, .	Timber, turpentine, fish.
Russia, .	Tallow, corn, flax, hemp, flax-seed, ashes, timber, tar, furs.
Canada, .	Timber, corn, pot and pearl ashes, furs.
Newfoundland,	Cod-fish.
Nova Scotia,	Timber, dried fish, plaster of Paris.
Hudson's Bay,	Furs, procured from the Indians.
Columbia River,	Furs, procured from the Indians.
Kamtschatka,	Furs and dried fish.
Siberia, .	Furs and minerals.
Greenland,	Whale-oil, whale-bone.
Australia,	Gold, copper, wool.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

Into how many great climates or regions may the earth be divided? Name them. The utility of such a division of the earth's surface? How may the general boundaries of these zones or regions be traced? What is meant by the region of the spices? The extent of it? What are the other principal productions of it? Name the other *regions*, and enumerate the principal productions of each. Give practical illustrations of those general principles, by enumerating the **EXPORTS** of the principal countries of the world, as given in the annexed table? From what countries are the following commodities chiefly **IMPORTED**?

Almonds.	Dye-wood.	Lacquered	Rum.
Aloes.	Ebony.	ware.	Sago.
Arrow root.	Figs.	Logwood.	Silks.
Camphor.	Frankincense.	Mahogany.	Spices.
Cinnamon.	Furs.	Maize.	Sugar.
Cloves.	Ginger.	Maple.	Tallow.
Cochineal.	Grapes.	Mulberry.	Tar.
Coffee.	Gums.	Oak timber.	Tea.
Cork wood.	Hemp.	Oranges.	Teak timber.
Cotton.	Hides.	Olives.	Tobacco.
Currants.	Indigo.	Palm oil.	Turpentine
Dates.	Iron work	Pine timber.	Varnish
Dried fruits.	Ivory.	Rice.	Whale oil.
Drugs.	Lemons.	Rosewood.	Wines.

## QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE WORLD.

1. What have you before you? 2. What is a *map*? 3. What is a *globe*? 4. How much of a globe can you see at once? 5. How might you see it all at one view? (By dividing it into two equal parts or *hemispheres*, and by placing them on a table or against a wall, with their edges in contact.) 6. Is not a *map* of the world intended to represent a *globe*, so divided and so placed? 7. In looking at a globe or a map where is the observer supposed to be?

8. What is *Geography*? 9. How is the *earth* divided? 10. What parts of the map before you represent *land*? 11. Point to the parts which represent *water*. 12. Is there more *water* than *land* upon the surface of the earth? 13. How much more do you think? 14. What do you mean by *two-thirds*? 15. The *two-thirds* of a shilling are! 16. Of a yard? 17. Of a foot?

18. What is the *Equator*? 19. Why is it so called? 20. How does it divide the earth? 21. Why are they called *hemispheres*? 22. Why *northern* and *southern*? 23. Why the *top* of the map called the *north*? 24. The bottom, or the part opposite to the north is called? 25. Point to the east, west, north-east, north-west, south-east, and south-west of the map. 26. How do you find the four cardinal points of the horizon? 27. Point in the direction of the north, south, east, west, north-east, &c.

28. Is there more land north of the equator than to the south of it? 29. How much more do you think? 30. How many great divisions of *land* are there on the earth's surface? 31. How many of *water*? 32. Name and point out the five great divisions of land. 33. Name, and trace with the pointer, the five great divisions of water? 34. Which of the great divisions of land are in the northern hemisphere or north of the equator? 35. How are the others situated with regard to the equator? 36. Which of the oceans, or great divisions of water, are in both hemispheres? 37. Which is in the northern and which in the southern hemisphere?

38. What is a *continent*? 39. What is an *ocean*? 40. Name the continents in the order of their size. 41. Name the oceans in like manner. 42. Europe, Asia, and Africa are sometimes called? 43. Why is America called the Western Continent? 44. The New World? 45. Oceanica comprehends? 46. What is meant by the term *Australia*? 47. What by *Polynesia*?

48. How is Europe bounded on the north? 49. How on the south? 50. West? 51. East? 52. Give the boundaries of Asia, Africa, and America, in the same way. 53. Point out Australia and the principal islands of Polynesia. 54. Which of the continents, or great divisions of land, are connected? 55. Are the oceans, or great divisions of water, connected with each other? 56. The Pa-

cific extends from? 57. The Atlantic extends from? 58. The Indian Ocean lies between? 59. The Arctic Ocean surrounds? 60. The Antarctic? 61. Are there, or could there be, any natural or definite boundaries between these oceans?

62. What is a *sea*? 63. Name and point out the seas connected with the Atlantic on the *east* side? 64. On the *west*? 65. The seas connected with the Indian and Arctic Oceans? 66. Why no part of the Antarctic Ocean called a sea? 67. Why the *Pacific* so called? 68. The *Atlantic* owes its name to? 69. The *Indian* Ocean, why so called? 70. The meaning of the terms *Arctic* and *Antarctic*?

71. Into how many grand declivities is Europe divided? 72. The *consequent* direction of the principal rivers in Europe? 73. Name some of them, and point to their sources and general direction. 74. The great *physical* or natural divisions of Asia? 75. The great *northern* declivity lies between? 76. By what great rivers may the northern declivity be traced? 77. Name the other great natural divisions of Asia, and trace the principal rivers which flow through them. 78. Into how many great natural divisions may South America be divided? 79. Into how many, North America? 80. Name and trace each upon the map; and also the principal rivers which flow through them. Name and point out the principal mountain ranges in each continent.

81. The continents, or great divisions of the land, are subdivided into? 82. Name the principal countries of each. 83. What is *latitude*? 84. *Parallels* of latitude? 85. Why so called? 86. In what direction, therefore, do they run? 87. The most important parallels of latitude are? 88. Why called *tropics*? 89. How many *zones* are there, and how is each bounded? 90. What is a *meridian*? 91. The first meridian? 92. What is longitude? 93. In what latitude is the entire northern hemisphere? 94. All Asia, Europe, and North America are, therefore, in what latitude? 95. Over what countries and islands does the Equator pass? 96. How does it divide the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans? 97. Over what countries and islands do the tropics pass? 98. Over what countries does the Arctic circle pass? 99. Through what straits in the western, and sea in the eastern hemisphere does it run?

100. Name all the countries in the Torrid zone. 101. Also, in the north and south Temperate zones. 102. Also in the north Frigid zone. 103. In what zone is Europe? 104. What part of it lies within the north Frigid zone? 105. What part of the earth is the *warmest*? 106. Why the *middle*? 107. What parts of the Temperate zones, therefore, should we expect to find the *warmest*? 108. What the *coldest*? 109. What parts of the Temperate zones

---

1 See the Author's "Geography Generalized," page 155.



really deserve the name ? 110. Why the *middle* ? 111. What part of Europe, therefore, is the warmest ? 112. Why the *south* ? 113. Name all the countries in the south of Europe. 114. In what part of Europe is the temperature moderate ? 115. Name all the *middle* countries of Europe. 116. Name the *cold* countries in Europe.

117. What are the principal productions of the *south* of Europe ? 118. Of the *middle* countries ? 119. Of the *northern* ? 120. What countries in Europe lie north of the parallel of  $55^{\circ}$  ? 121. What countries are between the parallels of  $55^{\circ}$  and  $45^{\circ}$  ? 122. What countries in Europe are south of the parallel of  $45^{\circ}$  ? 123. What parts of Asia and America are in the same latitude as the *southern* countries of Europe ? 124. What in the same as the *middle* ? 125. What in the same as the *northern* ? 126. What part of America is in the same latitude as Ireland ? 127. Which is the largest European island ? 128. Asiatic ? 129. African ? 130. American ? 131. Where is there no latitude ? 132. Where no longitude ? 133. At what point is there neither ? 134. In what longitude is New Zealand ?

135. Point to Cape Horn, Murchison Point, Cape of Good Hope, Comorin, Romani, Severo or Taimura, Guardafui, Cape Verde. 136. The most northerly cape in Europe ? 137. The most easterly cape in South America ? 138. The most westerly in Africa ? 139. Where is the White Sea ? 140. The Black Sea ? 141. The Red Sea ? 142. The Yellow Sea ? 143. What is an *Archipelago* ? 144. Where is *the* Archipelago ? 145. The Indian Archipelago ? 146. The Columbian Archipelago ?

147. One vessel meets another at  $30^{\circ}$  north latitude and  $60^{\circ}$  west longitude ; point to the spot. 148. A vessel springs a leak at  $85^{\circ}$  east longitude and  $25^{\circ}$  south latitude, show her position, and calculate how many miles she is from the nearest land.<sup>1</sup> 149. In a voyage from the Black to the White Sea what straits, seas, &c., must be passed through ? 150. From the Red to the Yellow Sea ? 151. What is likely to be the cargo of a vessel from the Baltic ? 152. Of one from the Mediterranean ? 153. Of one from the West Indies ? 154. Of one from India ? 155. Of one from Greenland ? 156. Of one from England ?

157. Between what parallels does each of the continents lie ? 158. Between what meridians ?

[Similar questions should be put to the pupils on the maps of Europe, Asia, Africa, America, &c. But, as in a MAP OF THE WORLD, the comparative size and relative position of all the divisions of the earth are presented to the pupils at one view, they should be kept at it till they become perfectly familiar with its great outlines. When once the image of a MAP OF THE WORLD is firmly fixed in the mind of a pupil, his difficulties in Geography are over.]

<sup>1</sup> See "Geography Generalized," page 51, for the method.

## THE PRINCIPAL MOUNTAINS IN THE WORLD.

[With regard to the elevation of several of the following mountains, the authorities differ. This is not surprising, as, with few exceptions, it is only in Europe that accurate, or indeed any, measurements have been taken.]

The Mountains thus marked (v) are Volcanoes.

### ASIA.

Name.	Country.	Height in feet above sea level.
Mount Everest (Himalaya), .	Hindustan, .	29,000
Dhawala-Gira (Himalaya), .	Hindustan, .	26,460
Hindoo-Cooah, .	North of Cabul, .	20,000
Elburz (Caucasus), .	Circassia, .	18,526
Ararat, .	Armenia, .	17,260
Ophir, .	Sumatra, .	13,000
Mount Hermon, .	Palestine, .	10,000
Mount Taurus, .	Asia Minor, .	8,000
Sinai, .	Arabia, .	7,489
Adam's Peak, .	Ceylon, .	7,500
Altai (Highest Peak), .	Siberia, .	7,000
Mount Ida, .	Asia Minor, .	5,800

### AFRICA.

Hentet (Atlas), .	Morocco, .	15,000
Geesh Mountains, .	Abyssinia, .	15,000
Cameroons (Highest Peaks), .	Western Africa, .	13,000
Peak of Teneriffe,*	Canaries, .	12,236
Table Mountain, .	Cape of Good Hope, .	3,582
Diana's Peak, .	St. Helena, .	2,710

### EUROPE.

Mont Blanc, .	Savoy, .	15,730
Mont Rosa, .	Switzerland, .	15,150
Jungfrau, .	Switzerland, .	13,720
Ortler Spitz, .	Tyrol, .	12,852
Mulhacen, .	Spain, .	11,657
Simplon, .	Switzerland, .	11,551
Maladetta (Pyrenees), .	Spain, .	11,426
Mont Perdu (Pyrenees), .	France, .	11,000
St. Bernard, .	Switzerland, .	11,000
Etna,* .	Sicily, .	10,874
St. Gothard, .	Switzerland, .	10,598
Ruska (Carpathians), .	Hungary, .	9,912
Mont Corno (Appennines), .	Italy, .	9,523
Parnassus, .	Greece, .	8,000
Sneehatten (Dofrines), .	Norway, .	7,620

## 114 PRINCIPAL MOUNTAINS IN THE WORLD.

Name.	Country.	Height in feet above sea-level.
Puy de Sancy (Auvergne), . . . . .	France, . . . . .	6,224
Mezen (Cevennes), . . . . .	France, . . . . .	5,820
Mount Pelion, . . . . .	Greece, . . . . .	5,200
Hecla,* . . . . .	Iceland, . . . . .	5,110
Ben Macdhui, . . . . .	Scotland, . . . . .	4,338
Ben Nevis, . . . . .	Scotland, . . . . .	4,403
Vesuvius,* . . . . .	Italy, . . . . .	3,972
Snowdon, . . . . .	Wales, . . . . .	3,571
Carn Tual (Reeks), . . . . .	Ireland, . . . . .	3,410
Ben Lomond, . . . . .	Scotland, . . . . .	3,192
Helvellyn (Cumberland), . . . . .	England, . . . . .	3,055
Lugnaquilla (Wicklow), . . . . .	Ireland, . . . . .	3,000
Slieve Donard (Mourne), . . . . .	Ireland, . . . . .	2,796
Rock of Gibraltar, . . . . .	Spain, . . . . .	1,439

### AMERICA.

Aconcagua (Andes), . . . . .	Chili, . . . . .	23,910
Chimborazo (Andes), . . . . .	Colombia, . . . . .	21,464
Sorata (Andes), . . . . .	Bolivia, . . . . .	21,286
Illimani (Andes), . . . . .	Bolivia, . . . . .	21,145
Antisana* (Andes), . . . . .	Colombia, . . . . .	19,126
Cotopaxi* (Andes), . . . . .	Colombia, . . . . .	18,889
Popocatepetl,* . . . . .	Mexico, . . . . .	17,770
Mount St. Elias, . . . . .	North America, . . . . .	17,500
Mount Brown (Rocky Mountains), . . . . .	North America, . . . . .	15,990
Pichincha* (Andes), . . . . .	Colombia, . . . . .	15,976
Mount Fairweather, . . . . .	North America, . . . . .	14,750
Blue Mountains, . . . . .	Jamaica, . . . . .	7,227
M. Washington (Alleganies), . . . . .	United States, . . . . .	6,234

### OCEANICA.

Mouna Roa, . . . . .	Sandwich Islands, . . . . .	14,000
Mount Erebus,* . . . . .	South Victoria, . . . . .	12,400
Egmont, . . . . .	New Zealand, . . . . .	8,800
Kosciusko, . . . . .	Australia, . . . . .	6,400
Barren Mountains, . . . . .	Tasmania, . . . . .	5,000

### REMARKABLE ELEVATIONS.

- City of Quito, in South America, 9,600 feet.
- Convent of St. Bernard (Alps), 8,200 feet.
- City of Mexico (Mexico), 7,500 feet.
- Lake of Titicaca, Bolivia, 12,795 feet.
- The farm of Antisana, on the Andes, 13,500 feet.

## THE PRINCIPAL RIVERS IN THE WORLD.

[The authorities are no more agreed about the length of rivers, than they are about the height of mountains. Nor is it to be expected that they should; for the sources of many of them are still unknown, Except for the European rivers the lengths given are, for the most part, mere estimates.]

## ASIA.

Name.	Country.	Flow into.	Length in miles
Yang tse-kiang,	China,	Yellow Sea,	3,000
Yenisei,	Siberia,	Arctic Ocean,	2,900
Obi and Irtysh,	Siberia,	Arctic Ocean,	2,800
Hoang-ho,	China,	Yellow Sea,	2,600
Lena,	Siberia,	Arctic Ocean,	2,400
Saghalien,	Mongolia,	Sea of Okotsk,	2,300
Maykuang,	Thibet,	Chinese Sea,	2,000
Euphrates,	Syria,	Persian Gulf,	1,700
Indus,	Hindostan,	Indian Ocean,	1,700
Ganges,	Hindostan,	Bay of Bengal,	1,500
Brahmapootra,	Assam,	Bay of Bengal,	1,500
Irrawadi,	Birmah,	Bay of Bengal,	1,500
Sihon or Jaxartes,	West Tartary,	Sea of Aral,	1,000
Ural,	Russia,	Caspian Sea,	900
Tigris,	Turkey in Asia,	Euphrates,	900
Meinam,	Siam,	Gulf of Siam,	850
Godavery,	Hindostan,	Bay of Bengal,	800

## AFRICA.

Nile,	Egypt,	Mediterranean,	3,000
Niger,	Nigritia,	Gulf of Guinea,	2,300
Congo or Zaire,	Congo,	Atlantic,	1,300
Gareep or Orange,	South Africa,	Atlantic,	1,000
Zambezi,	Mozambique,	Indian Ocean,	950
Senegal,	Senegambia,	Atlantic,	950
Gambia,	Senegambia,	Atlantic,	650

## EUROPE.

Volga,	Russia,	Caspian Sea,	2,200
Danube,	Germany,	Black Sea,	1,700
Dnieper,	Russia,	Black Sea,	1,200
Dou,	Russia,	Sea of Azov,	1,100
Rhine,	Germany,	German Ocean,	760
Dniester,	Russia,	Black Sea,	700
Elbe,	Germany,	German Ocean,	680
Vistula,	Poland,	Baltic Sea,	630
Loire,	France,	Atlantic,	570
Oder,	Prussia,	Baltic Sea,	550

Name.	Country.	Flow into.	Length in miles.
Tagus, . . .	Spain & Portugal,	Atlantic, .	550
Rhone, . . .	Switzerland, .	Mediterranean,	460
Douro, . . .	Spain, . . .	Atlantic, . . .	455
Seine, . . .	France, . . .	English Channel,	450
Po, . . . . .	Italy, . . . .	Adriatic, . . .	410
Ebro, . . . .	Spain, . . . .	Mediterranean,	400
Garonne, . . .	France, . . .	Bay of Biscay, .	400
Guadalquivir, .	Spain, . . . .	Gulf of Cadiz, .	340
Shannon, . . .	Ireland, . . .	Atlantic, . . .	224
Thames, . . . .	England, . . .	North Sea, . . .	215
Tiber, . . . .	Italy, . . . .	Mediterranean,	200
Tay, . . . . .	Scotland, . . .	North Sea, . . .	129

## AMERICA.

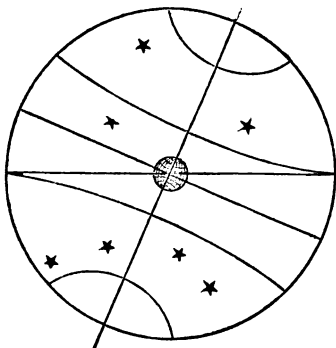
Mississippi and Missouri,	United States,	Gulf of Mexico,	4,000
Amazon or Marañon,	Brazil, . . . .	Atlantic, . . .	3,900
Parana and Paraguay,	La Plata & Brazil,	Atlantic, . . .	2,300
St. Lawrence, . . .	Canada, . . . .	G. of St. Lawrence,	2,000
Arkansas, . . . .	United States,	Mississippi, . .	2,000
Mackenzie, . . . .	British America,	Arctic Ocean, .	1,900
Madeira, . . . .	Peru and Brazil,	Amazon, . . . .	1,700
Rio del Norte, . .	Mexico, . . . .	Gulf of Mexico,	1,400
La Platte, . . . .	United States,	Mississippi, . .	1,300
Nelson, . . . . .	British America,	Hudson's Bay, .	1,250
Orinoco, . . . . .	Colombia, . . .	Atlantic, . . .	1,200
Ohio, . . . . .	United States,	Mississippi, . .	1,200
Tennessee, . . . .	United States,	Mississippi, . .	1,000
Magdalena, . . . .	Colombia, . . .	Caribbean Sea,	800
Frazer River, . . .	Brit. Colombia,	Gulf of Georgia,	620
Susquehanna, . . .	United States,	Chesapeake Bay,	600
Ottawa, . . . . .	Canada, . . . .	St. Lawrence, . .	500
Murray & Darling, .	Australia,	Encounter Bay,	1,200

## ESTIMATED AREA IN SQUARE MILES OF THE PRINCIPAL LAKES.

Caspian Sea, 120,000	Slave Lake, 11,000	Dead Sea, . . .	340
Lake Superior, 32,000	Winnipeg, . . .	Geneva, . . . .	240
Sea of Aral, 26,000	Erie, . . . . .	Garda, . . . . .	180
Michigan, . . 24,000	Ladoga, . . . .	Maggiore, . . .	150
Huron, . . . . .	Nicaragua, . . .	Lough Neagh, . .	150
Baikal, . . . . .	Titicaca, . . . .	Lough Lomond, .	40
Tchad, . . . . .	Wetter, . . . .	Windermere, . .	7½

## ASTRONOMY.

## CELESTIAL AND TERRESTRIAL SPHERES.



THE CELESTIAL SPHERE appears to *turn* round from east to west every 24 hours, carrying with it, in the same time, and in the same direction, the sun, moon, and stars. Hence the term **UNIVERSE**<sup>1</sup> has been applied to the *whole* system of the heavens and heavenly bodies; or, in other words, to the whole range of creation.

That portion of the universe of which the **SUN** is the centre, is called the **SOLAR** system. This system consists of the **SUN**, the stars called **PLANETS**, with their **SECONDARIES** or **SATELLITES**, and a number of **COMETS**.

The planets, though they differ very little in appearance from the stars, are opaque bodies like the earth; and, in

---

<sup>1</sup> *Universe*—because the heavens and the heavenly bodies appear to turn round in *one* and the same time.

fact, the earth is a planet. The light with which they shine is not their own, but received from the sun, and reflected back, as in the case of the moon. Like the earth, they revolve round the sun from west to east in orbits nearly circular. Like the earth, too, the planets, while revolving round the sun, turn upon their axes from west to east; and thus, like it, they have their days and their nights, their seasons and their years.

The names of the PRIMARY planets are (in the order of their distances from the sun<sup>1</sup>), Vulcan, Mercury, Venus, the Earth, Mars, the Asteroids, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus or the Georgium Sidus, and Neptune. Five of these planets, namely, Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn, are visible to the naked eye, and were known to the ancients. Uranus, the Asteroids, and Neptune, were discovered in modern times by the aid of the telescope; and there may be others yet undiscovered.

The small planets Ceres, Pallas, Juno, and Vesta, were discovered in the beginning of the present century; and because they differ in some respects from the other planets, they were called ASTEROIDS.<sup>2</sup> Since the year 1845, no fewer than *eighty-five* similar planets have been discovered in the same region of the heavens, that is, between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter, and they are

---

<sup>1</sup> The *distances* of the planets from the sun in millions of miles are, Vulcan 18½, Mercury 36, Venus 69, the Earth 95, Mars 144, Jupiter 490, Saturn 900, Uranus 1,800, and Neptune 2,800.

The following remarkable combination of figures, 888,000, will give the *diameters* of the sun and planets very nearly: the sun's diameter is about 888,000 miles in length; Jupiter's, 88,000; Saturn's, 80,000; the Earth's, 8,000; the diameter of Venus, nearly 8,000; of Mars, 4,000; of Mercury, 3,000; and of the Moon, 2,000. The diameter of Uranus is about 36,000 miles; and Neptune's about 31,000.

The *diameters* of only a few of the asteroids are known; and none of them exceed a few hundred miles in length. And with regard to their distance from the sun, they are all farther than Mars and nearer than Jupiter.

<sup>2</sup> *Asteroids*, that is, *like* or resembling stars. Compare the term *Spheroid*. *Planetoid* would be a more suitable name.

now usually called "The Minor or Ultra-zodiacal Planets or *Planetoids*."

More than 300 years ago, Kepler, the great German astronomer, predicted that a planet would be found between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter; and when the *Asteroids* were first discovered, it was supposed that they were the fragments of the planet alluded to, which, at some remote period, had burst in consequence of some internal convulsion.<sup>1</sup>

The **SECONDARY** planets or satellites revolve round their primaries as their centres, and with them round the sun. The number of secondary planets as yet discovered is twenty; namely, the Moon, which belongs to the earth, *four* satellites of Jupiter, *seven* of Saturn, *six* of Uranus, and *two* of Neptune. Except the Moon, none of the secondary planets are visible to the naked eye.

The **COMETS** also revolve round the sun, but in very elliptical or eccentric orbits. In one part of their orbit, they come very near the sun, as represented in the following **ILLUSTRATION**; and then they move off into the immensity of space far beyond the most distant planets. They differ in appearance from the stars, by having usually luminous trains or tails

All the other stars are called **FIXED STARS**, because, as they always preserve the same distances and positions with regard to each other, they seem, as it were, *fixed* in the heavens. They may be distinguished from the planets by their twinkling light.

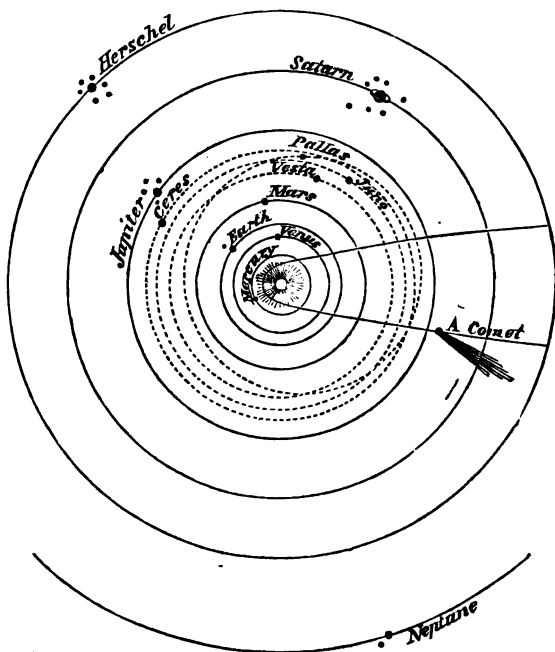
---

<sup>1</sup> This was the opinion of Olbers, and of several other eminent astronomers; but, of course, it is mere conjecture. On this subject Mr. Hind has observed, "It is singular that this group (the *Asteroids*) appears to separate the planets of small mass from the greater bodies of the system, the planets which rotate on their axes in about the same time as the earth, from those which are whirled round in less than half that interval, though of ten times the diameter of our globe; and it may yet be found that these small bodies, so far from being portions of the wreck of a great planet, were created in their present state for some wise purpose, which the progress of astronomy in future ages may eventually unfold."



The fixed stars are supposed to be the suns of other systems. [For a full introduction to this interesting study, the learner is referred to the Author's "Geography Generalized."]

## SOLAR SYSTEM.



## SACRED GEOGRAPHY.

PALESTINE, or the HOLY LAND, is properly a part of Syria.<sup>1</sup> It is bounded on the north by Phœnicia and Syria;<sup>2</sup> on the east by Syria and Arabia Deserta; on the south by Arabia Petræa; and on the west by the Mediterranean Sea.

This tract of country was originally inhabited by the descendants of Canaan, the grandson of Noah, and hence it was called the *Land of Canaan*.<sup>3</sup> It was afterwards called Palestine, from the *Philistines*,<sup>4</sup> who occupied the southern coasts; and Judea, from *Judah*, the chief tribe of the Israelites. It was also called the Land of Promise, the Holy Land, &c.

The limits of the country to which these names were applied, varied at different times; but, generally speaking, the greatest length of Palestine was nearly 200 miles; and its greatest breadth about 100 miles.

Palestine was differently divided at different times. When Joshua took possession of it, he divided it among the twelve tribes of Israel—Reuben, Simeon, Judah, Issachar, Zebulun, Manasseh, Ephraim,<sup>5</sup> Benjamin, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher.

<sup>1</sup> SYRIA, generally speaking, lies between the Euphrates on the east, the Mediterranean on the west, Mount Taurus on the north, and Arabia on the south.

<sup>2</sup> A line drawn from Damascus to a little to the southward of Tyre, will give its northern boundary. It extends from 31° to 33° 35' north latitude; and from 34° 30' to 36° 25' east longitude.

<sup>3</sup> The Sidonians, Hittites, Jebusites, Amorites, Hivites, &c., were, also, the descendants of Canaan, and the name *Canaanites* was originally applied to all; but it was afterwards restricted to a particular tribe.—Numb. xiii. 29.

<sup>4</sup> The Philistines were descended from Mizraim the second son of Ham, and were originally settled in Egypt; whence they emigrated and possessed themselves of all the country from Gaza to Joppa.

<sup>5</sup> Manasseh and Ephraim were properly a single tribe, being descendants of Joseph. The tribe of Levi had no portion assigned to

## LOCATION OF THE TWELVE TRIBES.

Between the Dead Sea and the Mediterranean were the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Dan.

On the west side of the Jordan were the tribes of Benjamin, Ephraim, half tribe of Manasseh, and the tribe of Issachar.

On the east side of the Jordan were the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh.

On the western side of the Sea of Galilee were the tribes of Zebulon and Naphtali.

North-west, on the Mediterranean, was the tribe of Asher.

It was afterwards divided<sup>1</sup> into the two kingdoms of Judah and Israel; and lastly by the Romans into four provinces or districts, namely, Galilee, Samaria, Judea Proper, and Peræa, or the Country beyond the Jordan.

In GALILEE<sup>2</sup> the chief places were—Cana, Chorazin, Capernaum, Bethsaida, Tiberias, Bethlehem, Nazareth, Nain, Zebulon, Accho or Ptolemais, now Acre.

In SAMARIA<sup>3</sup> the chief towns were—Samaria, Sychem or Sychar, and on the coast, Cæsarea and Joppa.

them. They subsisted on offerings, first-fruits, and tenths; and particular cities in the land of each tribe were appointed for their habitations.

<sup>1</sup> In consequence of the revolt of the ten tribes in the reign of Rehoboam the son of Solomon. The tribes of Judah and Benjamin, which alone remained faithful to the house of David, formed the kingdom of Judah; the other ten tribes, the kingdom of Israel.

<sup>2</sup> The Galileans were composed partly of the remnant of the ten tribes, and partly of Gentiles. Hence, the Jews (of Judah and Benjamin) regarded them as an inferior and degenerate race. In Galilee our Saviour spent the greater part of his life; it was the scene of many of his miracles, and from its inhabitants he selected most of his disciples.

<sup>3</sup> When the ten tribes were carried away captive into Assyria, a number of Assyrians were introduced into their country, who mingled with the Israelites that were left, and with those who afterwards returned. Hence, the Jews (who called them Samaritans, from *Samaria*, their capital) regarded them as little better than Gentiles, and the greatest aversion existed between the two nations. The separation of the ten tribes, the opposition of the Samaritans

IN JUDEA the chief towns were—Jerusalem, Jericho, BETHLEHEM, Ephraim, Bethel; also, Gaza, Gath, Ascalon, Azotus or Ashdod, and Ekron, in the country of the Philistines.

IN PERÆA, or the COUNTRY BEYOND THE JORDAN, the chief towns were—Cæsarea Philippi, Bethsaida or Julias, and Bethabara.

South of the Dead Sea were Idumæa or *Edom*, and the Land of Midian; but these countries are properly a part of Arabia.

MOUNTAINS.—On the north, *Libānus* or *Lebanon*, divided into two ranges—Libanus on the west, and Anti-Libanus on the east; *Hermon*, *Mount Carmel*, *Gilead*, *Tabor*, *Gilboa*, the mountains of *Abarim*, the most remarkable of which are, the *Heights of Baal*, *Pisgah*, and *Nebo*, on which Moses died. *Mount Seir* is in Idumæa or *Edom*; and *Mount Sinai*, between the two branches of the Red Sea. *Horeb* adjoins Sinai, and is, in fact, a peak of the same mountain.

RIVERS.—The *Jordan*<sup>1</sup> which rises in the mountains of Anti-Libanus, and flows through the waters of Merom, and the Sea of Galilee into the Dead Sea; the *Waters of Lebanon*, which flow into the Mediterranean; the *Arnon*, which rises in the chain of Gilead, and falls into the Dead Sea; the *Kishon*, which flows into the Mediterranean, north-east of Mount Carmel; and the Brooks *Jabbok*, *Kedron*, &c.

LAKES.—The *Lake of Sodom* or the *Dead Sea*;<sup>2</sup> the

to the rebuilding of the Jewish temple after the Babylonish captivity, and their ill treatment of the Jews who passed through their country to worship at Jerusalem, instead of going to Mount Gerizim, account for the hatred and hostility between the two nations.

<sup>1</sup> *Jordan*, that is, the river of *Dan*, so called from a town near its source.

<sup>2</sup> *Dead Sea*.—This lake is also known in Scripture by the names of the *Salt Sea*, the *Sea of the Plain*, and the *East Sea*. The Greeks called it *Asphaltites*, from the sulphurous and bituminous matter which it casts upon its shores; and with which its waters are deeply

*Sea of Galilee* or *Tiberias*,<sup>1</sup> called also the *Sea of Chinnereth*, and the *Lake of Gennesareth*; the *Waters of Merom*.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

Of what country is Palestine properly a part? How, generally speaking, is Syria bounded? The boundaries of Palestine? What would give its precise northern boundary? By what other names was it called, and why in each case? Were the limits of the country to which these names were applied always the same? Its greatest length and breadth, generally speaking? The general and restricted application of the term *Canaanites*? From whom were the *Philistines* descended? What was their original country? What part of the land of Canaan did they possess themselves of? How was Palestine divided by Joshua? Name the twelve tribes of Israel. Why was no portion assigned to the tribe of *Levi*? What provision was made for them? How was the number of the twelve tribes made up without reckoning the tribe of *Levi*? How were the twelve tribes located?

Upon what occasion was Palestine divided into the two kingdoms of Judah and Israel? How was it divided by the Romans? Why did the Jews consider the Galileans as an inferior race? What is said of Galilee with regard to our Saviour? Why did the Jews regard the Samaritans as little better than Gentiles? What other causes of aversion existed between the Jews and Samaritans? The principal towns in Galilee? In Samaria? In Judea? In Persæa or the country beyond the Jordan? Point them out on the map. Where was Idumæa or Edom? Where the land of Midian? Trace them on the map. Of what country are they properly a part? Name the principal mountains, and point them out on the map. On which of them did Moses die? The principal rivers? Trace them on the map. The meaning of the term *Jordan*? What is said of the *Dead Sea*? By what other names is it called in Scripture? By what name did the Greeks call it? Why? Its extent? Is it always of the same extent? Why not? Its length and breadth, generally speaking? Name the lakes, and point them out on the map. Is the *Sea of Tiberias*, strictly speaking, a *sea*?

---

impregnated. The appearance of this sea, and of the whole scenery about it, is dreary, desolate, and death-like. It varies in extent, according to the season of the year, from about forty to sixty miles in length; and from about ten to fifteen miles in breadth.

<sup>1</sup> *Sea of Tiberias*.—This is a freshwater lake, about sixteen miles long and from six to nine broad.

## ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY.

## THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES KNOWN TO THE ANCIENTS.

## ASIA.

**CHALDÆA**, in the earliest ages of the world, comprised the countries between the Euphrates and Tigris near their junction; but the name was afterwards given to the country south-west of the Euphrates. Chaldæa may be regarded as the cradle of mankind, as it was in this part of the earth that the garden of Eden was situated. It was afterwards called Babylonia, from its metropolis *Babylon*, the most celebrated city of antiquity. This country is now called Irak-Arābi, and the chief cities are *Bagdad* and *Bassōra*.

**ASSYRIA** originally meant the country to the east of the Tigris; but the name was afterwards frequently extended to *Syria*. Assyria took its name from *Asshur*, one of the descendants of Shem. Its chief city was the celebrated *Nineveh*, which stood on the banks of the Tigris, near, it is supposed, the site of the village of *Nounia*, in the neighbourhood of Mosul.

**SYRIA** comprised all the countries between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean on the one hand, and between Arabia and the branches of Mount Taurus on the other. *Damascus*, which existed in the days of Abraham, was the chief city of Syria. It is still a large and flourishing town. Between the Orontes and the Euphrates, about 120 miles north-east from Damascus, stood *Palmyra* or "Tadmor in the Desert." Its magnificent ruins are scattered over an extent of several miles. *Balbec* or *Heliopolis*, that is, the city of the sun, is also celebrated for its magnificent ruins, particularly for a temple of the sun. Its site is about forty miles south-west of Damascus.

About 170 miles north-north-east of Damascus, and 76 miles east-south-east of Iskenderoon, stood *Berœa*, now *Aleppo*, a city of great wealth and importance when the trade of Europe and the East was carried on overland.

To the west of Damascus, in that part of Syria called Phœnicia, were the celebrated commercial cities of *Tyre*

and *Sidon*; and farther to the south, *Joppa*, now *Jaffa*, where Jonah embarked for Tarshish, and at which Solomon imported the materials for the Temple.

On the Orontes, about twelve miles from the coast, was the rich and populous city of *Antioch*,<sup>1</sup> where the disciples of our Lord were first called CHRISTIANS; and near the mouth of the same river, the seaport *Seleucia*,<sup>1</sup> from which St. Paul embarked for Cyprus in his first apostolic journey.

MESOPOTAMIA<sup>2</sup> was the name given to the tract of country *between the rivers* Euphrates and Tigris. The southern part of this country, near the junction of the rivers, was included in the ancient *Chaldaea* or *Babylonia*. In Mesopotamia was *Ur* of the Chaldees, from which Abraham was called to the land of Canaan (the country between the river Jordan and the Mediterranean Sea). In the north-west of Mesopotamia was *Haran* or *Charra*,<sup>3</sup> and *Edessa*.

ARMENIA,<sup>4</sup> which still retains its name, lies to the north of the ancient Mesopotamia. It consists principally of mountainous regions; and in it are the sources of the rivers Euphrates, Tigris, Cyrus or *Kur*, and Araxes or *Aras*. The chief towns were *Tigranocerta* and *Artaxata*. In Armenia is the celebrated Mount Ararat, on which Noah's Ark first rested.

COLCHIS, ALBANIA, and IBERIA, lay to the north of Armenia, between the Euxine and Caspian Sea. These countries, which are intersected by the Caucasian mountains, now include Georgia, Mingrelia, and part of Circassia.

At the mouth of the Phasis stood a city of the same

<sup>1</sup> There were several other cities called *Antioch* and *Seleucia*.

<sup>2</sup> *Mesopotamia*. This term is derived from two Greek words which signify in the *middle* or *between the rivers*. In like manner, the terms *Punjab* and *Doab*, in Hindostan, signify the one *between the five*, and the other *between the two rivers*. Compare also *Senegambia* (that is, between the *Senegal* and *Gambia*), in Africa; and *Entre Douro e Minho*, in Portugal.

<sup>3</sup> *Haran* is mentioned in Genesis xi, 31. It was here Crassus was defeated and slain by the Parthians. The Romans called it *Curus*.

<sup>4</sup> *Armenia* took its name from *Aram*, the fifth son of Shem.

name, the capital of Colchis, celebrated in fable for the expedition of Jason in search of the Golden Fleece.

**MEDIA** lay to the south of the Caspian Sea, and north of Persia. Its chief town was *Ecbatāna*.

**PERSIA**, which still retains its name, lay to the north of the Persian Gulf, and to the south of Media; but it was afterwards greatly extended. Its ancient name was *Elam*, from having been first inhabited by the descendants of Elam, the eldest son of Shem. The chief towns were *Persepolis*, *Susa*, and *Elymais*.

**ARABIA** still retains its ancient name and divisions, namely, Arabia *Deserta*, *Petræa*, and *Felix*.

In Arabia was the land of Uz, the country of Job; also Edom or Idumæa, the land of Midian, and Saba, the country of Sheba, the "Queen of the South."<sup>1</sup>

In the tongue of land between the northern branches of the Red Sea, were Mounts Sinai and Horeb; and at the top of the eastern branch stood *Ezion-Geber*, from which the ships of Solomon sailed to Ophir.<sup>2</sup> At the top of the western branch stood *Arsinœ* or *Cleopatria*, now *Suez*.

**ASIA MINOR** consists of the great western projection of Asia between the Euxine or Black Sea on the north, the Mediterranean on the south, and the Ægean or Archipelago on the west. The term Asia Minor does not occur in classic writers, but was first applied in the middle ages.

The Romans divided this part of Asia into *Asia cis* or *intra Taurum*, and *Asia ultra* or *extra Taurum*.

#### DIVISIONS OF ASIA MINOR.

*In the north*—Pontus, Paphlagonia, and Bithynia.

*In the west*—Troas, Mysia, Æolis, Ionia, Lydia, and Caria.

<sup>1</sup> *Saba* or *Sheba* was in the south-western extremity of Arabia Felix, which, in the time of our Saviour, was considered by the Jews as the most distant land to the southward; and hence she is described as coming from the uttermost part of the earth.

<sup>2</sup> *Ophir* is supposed to have been a port in *Scfala*, on the south-eastern coast of Africa.



*In the south*—Lycia, Pamphylia, Pisidia, Isauria, and Cilicia.

*In the east*—Cappadocia and Armenia Minor.

*In the middle*—Galatia, Phrygia, and Lycaonia.

The chief cities in Asia Minor were *Ilium* or Troy in Troas; *Ephesus* in Ionia, celebrated for the temple of Diana, one of the Seven Wonders of the world;<sup>1</sup> *Smyrna*, also in Ionia, still a flourishing city; *Sardis* and *Philadelphia* in Lydia; *Halicarnassus* in Caria, where Herodotus, the father of history, was born, and Mausolus was buried, whose tomb<sup>1</sup> was another of the Seven Wonders of the world; *Cnæus*, also in Caria, in which was a celebrated statue of Venus, made by Praxiteles; *Patara* and *Xanthus* in Lycia; *Perga* in Pamphylia; *Tarsus* in Cilicia, the birthplace of St. Paul; *Issus*, also in Cilicia, where Alexander defeated Darius; *Iconium*, *Derbe*, and *Lystra*, in Lycaonia, where St. Paul was stoned (Acts xvi. 19); *Gordium*<sup>2</sup> and *Laodicæa* in Phrygia; *Chalcædon* in Bithynia, now called Scutari; *Nicæa*, now Nice, also in Bithynia, famous for the first general council held there in 325; *Sinôpë*, in Paphlagonia, the birthplace of Diogenes; *Trapezus*, now Trebizond, in Pontus; and *Cerdus*, whence Lucullus is said to have first brought the cherry-tree into Italy.

Of the northern and eastern countries of Asia scarcely any thing was known by the ancients: the former the Romans called by the general name of *Scythia*, and the latter they divided into *India intra Gangem*, (within, or on this side the Ganges,) and *India extra Gangem* (beyond the Ganges).

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

Chaldæa originally meant? To what country was the name afterwards given? Why may it be regarded as the cradle of mankind? What was it afterwards called? It is now called? Its chief cities? *Assyria* originally meant? To what country was the name afterwards frequently extended? From whom did

<sup>1</sup> Hence the term *mausoleum*, which was first applied to his tomb. The five other Wonders were the Pyramids of Egypt; the Walls and Hanging Gardens of Babylon; the Labyrinth of Egypt; the Colossus of Rhodes; and the Statue of Jupiter Olympus at Athens, 75 feet high, sculptured by Phidias in ivory and gold.

<sup>2</sup> Where Alexander cut the famous Gordian knot, instead of untying it.

it take its name? Its chief city? On what river was it? What is said of *Nounia*? What did ancient Syria comprise? How is the great antiquity of Damascus proved? What other cities of ancient Syria are mentioned, and what is said of each? Point them out on the map.

The meaning of the term *Mesopotamia*? The southern part of this country was included in? What is said of *Ur*? What other terms are mentioned? *Armenia* took its name from? Where does it lie? What kind of a country is it? What rivers have their sources in it? What is said of Mount Ararat? What were the chief towns? Where did Colchis, Albania, and Iberia lie? These countries now include? By what mountains are they intersected? The capital of Colchis? On what river did it stand? For what was it celebrated? Where did Media lie? Its chief towns?

The situation of Persia? Were its limits afterwards extended? Its ancient or Scripture name? Why was it so called? Its chief towns? The boundaries of Arabia? How was it divided? Trace these divisions on the map. What is said of the land of *Uz*? What other countries are mentioned as being in Arabia? Who was *Sheba*? Why was she described as coming from "the uttermost part of the earth?" Where are Mounts Sinai and Horeb? Where Ezion-Geber? Where Ophir? What ancient town stood where Suez now does? Asia Minor consists of? When was this term first applied? How did the Romans divide this part of Asia? The divisions of Asia Minor in the *north*? In the *west*? In the *south*? In the *east*? In the *middle*? The principal cities of Asia Minor? Point them out on the map, and state what they were remarkable for? The Seven Wonders of the World? The origin of the term *mausoleum*? Did the Romans know any thing of the *northern* and *eastern* parts of Asia? What name did they apply to the former, and what to the latter?

## AFRICA.

EGYPT, which still retains its ancient name, was a civilized and powerful nation even in the days of Abraham. It was first inhabited by Ham and his descendants; and hence it was called by the Jews *Mizraim*,<sup>1</sup> or the land of Ham.

The chief cities were—*Memphis*, which stood on the Nile, about a hundred miles from its mouth, near the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mizraim*, a son of Ham (See page 121.)

locality of Grand Cairo, its present capital; *Thebes*, famous for its hundred gates, about two hundred miles farther up the river; and a little below Thebes, *Coptos*, once the great emporium of Arabian and Indian commerce.

Towards Ethiopia, nearly under the tropic of Cancer, was *Syēnē*; near the mouth of the eastern channel stood *Pelusium*, now Damietta; and at the mouth of the western channel *Canōpus*, now Rosetta. About fifteen miles to the west of *Canōpus*, between Lake Mareōtis and the island of Pharos, which was joined to the mainland by a mole or causeway nearly a mile long, stood the celebrated city of *Alexandria*; so called from its founder, Alexander the Great. It was subsequently called *Scanderoon*, but it has again resumed its ancient name.<sup>1</sup>

The other ancient divisions of Africa were Lybia, Ethiopia, Regio Syrtica, Africa Propria, Numidia, Mauritania, and Gætulia.

LYBIA lay to the west of Egypt, and extended along the coast as far as the Great Syrtis. In the north-west of Lybia was a noted city called *Cyrēne*, whence the territory adjoining was called *Cyrenaica*, or "the country about Cyrene."

ETHIOPIA lay to the south of Egypt along the Nile. It includes Abyssinia and Nubia.

REGIO SYRTICA lay between the *Syrtis Major* (Gulf of Sidra) and *Syrtis Minor* (Gulf of Cabes). It was afterwards called Tripōlis or Tripolitana, from its three principal cities.<sup>2</sup> It is now called Tripoli.

AFRICA PROPRIA comprised the territory of the ancient and celebrated Carthage. Its other cities were Utica, Hadrumētum, Thapsus, and Tunis, which is about fifteen miles to the east of the site of Carthage.

The chief towns of Numidia were Cirta, Tabrāca, and Hippo Regius.

The chief towns of Mauritania were Cæsārēa and Tingis, now Tangier.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Scanderoon* is a corruption of *Alexandria*.

<sup>2</sup> Namely *Septis*, *Cea*, and *Sabrata*.

South of Mauritania lived the *Gætuli*, and *Garymantes*, of whose country little was known.

West of *Gætulia* were the *Insula Fortunatæ* or *Fortunate Islands*, one of which was called *Canaria*, from the number of large dogs (*canes*) found in it. They are now called the *Canary Isles*.

North of the *Fortunate Islands* were the *Insula Purpurariæ*, discovered by *Juba*, who there set up a manufacture of *purple*. They are now called the *Madeiras*.

## EUROPE.

### ANCIENT DIVISIONS OF EUROPE.

**GRÆCIA** or *Greece*, which, generally speaking, comprehended the *Peloponnesus*, *Græcia Propria*, *Thessalia* and *Epirus*.

**ITALIA** or *Italy*, the three principal divisions of which were *Italia Propria* in the middle; *Magna Græcia* in the south; and *Gallia Cisalpina* in the north.

**HISPANIA** or *Spain*, and **LUSITANIA**, or *Portugal*. *Spain* was also called *Iberia*, and from its western situation, *Hesperia*.

**GALLIA** or *Gaul* was divided into *Gallia Cisalpina*, or the northern part of *Italy*; and *Gallia Transalpina*, or the modern *France*, *Belgium*, *Switzerland*, and part of *Germany*. *Transalpine Gaul* was divided into three parts, *Celtica*, *Belgica*, and *Aquitania*.

**GERMANIA** or *Germany*, which, generally speaking, included the country between the *Rhine* and the *Vistula*, the *Danube*, and the *Baltic*.

**BATAVIA**, now *Holland* or the *Netherlands*.

**SCANDINAVIA**, now *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Lapland*, and *Finland*.

**SARMATIA**, which now comprehends *Russia*, *Poland*, and part of *Prussia*.

**DACIA**, now *Moldavia*, *Wallachia*, and *Transylvania*.

**MÆSIA**, now *Servia* and *Bulgaria*.

**THRACIA** or *Thrace*, now a part of *Roumelia*.

**ILLYRICUM**, which now comprehends *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia*, *Croatia*, and *Sclavonia*.

**PANNONIA**, now *Hungary*; **NOBICUM**, now *Austria*;

**HELVETIA**, now Switzerland; **RHETIA** and **VINDELICIA**, now the Tyrol and Country of the Grisons.

**BRITANNIA**,<sup>1</sup> of England; **CALEDONIA**, or Scotland; and **HIBERNIA**, or Ireland.

**ISLANDS**.—*Sicilia* or Sicily; *Sardinia*; *Creta*, now Candia; *Melita*, now Malta; *Baleāres* or Balearic Isles, now Majorca, Minorca, and Iviza; *Eubæa*, now Negropont, &c.

**PENINSULAS**—Chersonesus *Cimbrica*, now Jutland; *Peloponnesus*, now the Morea; Chersonesus *Taurica*, now the Crimea.

**SEAS**.—*Mare Magnum* or *Internum*, now the Mediterranean; *Sinus Codanus*, now the Baltic; *Oceānus Cantabricus*, now the Bay of Biscay; *Mare Ægæum*, now the Archipelago; *Pontus Euxinus*, now the Black Sea; *Palus Mæotis*, now the Sea of Azov; *Propontis*, now the Sea of Marmöra, &c.

**RIVERS**.—*Rha*, now the Volga; *Danubius* or *Ister*, the Danube; *Tanāis*, the Don; *Borysthēnes*, the Dnieper; *Padus* or *Eridānus*, the Po; *Rhenus*, the Rhine; *Rhodānus*, the Rhone; *Albis*, the Elbe; *Ibērus*, the Ebro; *Liger* or *Ligēris*, the Loire; *Sequāna*, the Seine; *Bætis*, the Guadalquivir.

**LAKES**.—*Lemānus*, Geneva; *Brigantinus*, Constance.

<sup>1</sup> When the Romans invaded Britain it was divided into a number of small independent states or tribes. The principal of these were the *Cantii*, inhabiting Kent; the *Trinobantes*, Middlesex; the *Belge*, Hampshire, Wiltshire, and Somersetshire; the *Durotriges*, Dorsetshire; the *Damnonii*, Devonshire and Cornwall; the *Silures*, South Wales; the *Ordovices*, North Wales; the *Icen*, Essex, Suffolk Norfolk, &c.; the *Brigantes*, Yorkshire, &c.

The Romans divided the country into two parts, *Romana* and *Barbara*, of different extent at different times, according to the progress of their conquests. *Britannia Romana* they further divided into *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Superior*, *Inferior*, &c.

The names of the principal rivers were, the *Tamēsis* (Thames), *Sabrina* (Severn), *Abus* (Humber, &c.), *Vedra* (Wear), *Tina* (Tyne), *Avon* (Eden), &c.

The principal Islands were, *Vectis* (Wight), *Mona* (Anglesey), *Mona* or *Monedā* (Man).

## DIFFERENT RACES OF MEN.



1. Caucasian or European. 2. Mongolian or Asiatic. 3. Ethiopian or African. 4. Indian or Native American. 5. Malay.

Adam and Eve were, as the Scriptures inform us, the first parents of the human race. All the inhabitants of the earth, therefore, are originally, of the same race or descent. It is true that the inhabitants of some countries differ widely from those of others in colour, features, habits, and general appearance; but these differences and peculiarities are the effects of climate, different modes of living, education, and other causes which we cannot enter into here.

The colour of the skin, quality of the hair, form of the features, and shape of the skull, are the traits by which the different races of men are usually distinguished.

The HUMAN FAMILY is usually divided into five branches or varieties, as in the preceding ILLUSTRATION.

1. The *Caucasian* race, with features like ours, includes Europeans, and their descendants, as the Americans, with the Moors of Africa, and the people of Asia, west of the river Obi, the Belur Tag mountains, and the Ganges. The Caucasians are of all complexions, according to the climate, but *white* is their natural colour.

2. The *Mongolian* race comprises the natives of Asia, east of the river Obi, the Belur Tag mountains, and the Ganges (except the inhabitants of *Malacca*). The colour of their skin is of a *deep yellow*, their hair lank and black, their eyes small and oblique, and their cheek-bones high or prominent. The inhabitants of the *frigid zone* are like the Mongolians, except that they are dwarfish.

3. The *Ethiopian* or African race comprises all the natives of Africa to the south of the Sahara and Abyssinia; also the natives of New Holland, Van Diemen's Land, Papua or New Guinea, and other islands in the Indian Archipelago. Their skin is black, their noses large and flat, their hair frizzled and woolly, their lips thick, particularly the upper one, their foreheads low and retreating, their eyes black, and their cheek-bones prominent.

4. The *Indian* or American race comprises all the native American tribes, except the *Esquimaux*. They are of a *reddish* or cinnamon colour, their hair is black and lank, their beard thin and scanty, their eyes sunk, and their cheek-bones high.

5. The *Malay* race, found in Malacca, and in some of the Asiatic islands, are of a *brown* or tawny colour, with strong, black, curled hair, and broad mouths and noses.

The *Malay* race approximates to the Ethiopian, and the *Indian* to the Mongolian.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

How is it proved that all the inhabitants of the earth are of one race or descent? How are their differences and peculiarities accounted for? What are the traits by which the different races of men are usually distinguished? Into how many branches or varieties is the human family divided? Name and describe each of these branches or varieties.

SKETCH OF ANCIENT HISTORY.

---

THE history of the world commences with the CREATION, which took place about four thousand years before the Christian era.

The next great event was the DELUGE, which took place in the year of the world 1656, or 2348 years before the Christian era.

After the deluge the earth was peopled by the sons of Noah and their families. Generally speaking, Asia was peopled by Shem, Africa by Ham, and Europe by Japheth. The sons of Shem were, Elam, Arphaxad, Lud, Aram, and Asshur. Elam appears to have settled in Persia, from which circumstance the inhabitants of that country are called in Scripture *Elamites*; Asshur in *Assyria*, Aram in *Armenia* or Syria, and Lud in *Lydia*, to which countries they gave their names.

From *Eber*, the grandson of Arphaxad, who peopled Chaldæa and Mesopotamia, or from (*Abram*) Abraham, the sixth in descent from Eber, the *Hebrews* derived their name.

The sons of Ham were, Cush, Mizraim, Phut, and Canaan. The children of Cush settled in Arabia and Ethiopia; Mizraim peopled Egypt, Lybia, and the northern parts of Africa; and Canaan, the country between the river Jordan and the Mediterranean Sea.

Japheth and his descendants peopled the "Isles of the Gentiles," or Europe, for so this division of the earth appears to have been denominated; perhaps from its being separated by sea from Asia and Africa.

The first kind of government was the patriarchal, or that of the father of a large family; to which succeeded the monarchical, or government of kings. But a king in the early ages of the world was merely the chief of a tribe, or the ruler over a small territory.



**Nimrod**, the son of Cush, the mighty or celebrated hunter, appears to have been the first person who assumed sovereign authority. About a hundred years after the deluge he built Babel, the germ of the celebrated Babylon, and three other cities in the same territory.

About the same period **Asshur**, a son of Shem, built Nineveh, on the Tigris, which was enlarged by, and called after his successor *Ninus*. Babylon was conquered by Ninus, and greatly enlarged by him, and also by his queen, the celebrated *Semirāmis*, who reigned after him.

These celebrated personages laid the foundation of the **ASSYRIAN** or **BABYLONIAN** empire, the first great monarchy of antiquity.

The Assyrian empire is usually divided into the first and second. The first empire was overthrown during the reign of *Sardanapālus*<sup>1</sup> by *Belēsis*, governor of Babylon, and *Arbāces*, governor of Media, an Assyrian province; and the second in the reign of *Belshazzar*, by the celebrated *Cyrus*, who, in the 538th year before the Christian era, captured Babylon, as had been predicted by the prophets, and took possession of the kingdom.

*Cyrus* was the founder of the empire of the **MEDES** and **PERSIANS**, the second great monarchy of antiquity; which was overthrown by *Alexander the Great* in the 330th year before the Christian era.

The Greek or **MACEDONIAN** empire was the third great monarchy of antiquity, which, on the death of *Alexander the Great*, in the 323rd year before the Christian era, was broken up into several kingdoms, and taken possession of by his generals. The chief kingdoms formed out of the Macedonian empire were, Syria, Egypt, and Macedonia. *Seleucus* and his successors, the *Seleucidæ*, reigned in Syria; *Ptolemy*

---

<sup>1</sup> About 820 years before the Christian era.

and his descendants, most of whom took his name, in Egypt; and Antigonus and his descendants in Macedonia.

All these kingdoms were overthrown by the Romans, who established the fourth great empire of antiquity. The Roman empire was in its turn overthrown—in the west<sup>1</sup> by the Goths, Vandals, and other barbarous nations from the north of Europe, in the fourth and fifth centuries; and in the east,<sup>1</sup> first by the Saracens, and finally by the Turks, who, in 1453, took Constantinople, and still keep possession of it.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The first great era in the history of the world? How many years before the Christian era was the creation? The next great event? The date of the deluge? How was the earth re-peopled after the deluge? The sons of Shem? To what countries did they give their names? From whom did the Hebrews derive their name? The sons of Ham? What countries did they and their descendants people? Did they people any of the countries in Asia? To what general statement are these exceptions? By whom was Europe peopled? The Bible name of Europe? Why so called?

What was the first kind of government? This naturally led to? How was the term *king* applied in the early ages of the world? Who was the first person who assumed sovereign authority? Who was he, and what is said of him? The date of the building of Babel? Of what celebrated city was this the germ? The site or position of Babylon? Of what other celebrated city were the foundations laid about the same period, and by whom? Its site or position? Did *Nineveh* take its name from its founder? From whom then, and why? What is said of Ninus with regard to Babylon? What is said of Semiramis? The first great monarchy of antiquity? Who laid the foundation of it? How is the Assyrian monarchy usually divided? The first empire was overthrown by? In whose reign? The second by? When, and in whose reign? Had this event been predicted by the prophets? The second great monarchy of antiquity? By whom was it

---

<sup>1</sup> The Roman empire was, in the year 895, divided into the Eastern and the Western empires; the capital of the former was Constantinople, and of the latter, Rome.

founded, and when? By whom was it overthrown, and when? How, and when, was the third great monarchy of antiquity broken up? What were the chief kingdoms formed out of its ruins? By what people were all these kingdoms overthrown? By whom was the fourth great empire of antiquity overthrown in the *west*, and when? By whom in the *east*, and when? When, and by whom, was the Roman empire divided into the eastern and western empires?

#### THE FIRST ASSYRIAN EMPIRE—BABYLON, ETC.

Three kingdoms arose from the ruins of this great empire, namely, the monarchy of the Medes, founded by Arbáces; that of Babylon under Belésis, who had joined with Arbáces in the conspiracy against Sardana-palus; and that of Nineveh, called the second empire of the Assyrians, whose first king took the name of Ninus the Younger.

Belésis was succeeded by Nabonasser, from whose accession to the throne of Babylon commences that famous era known by the name of the era of Nabonasser. It corresponds to the year 747 B.C. From this time till an interregnum that took place after the sixth successor of Nabonasser, Babylon continued to be governed by its own kings. It was then taken possession of by Esarhaddon, king of Nineveh, and added to the Assyrian empire. But on the destruction of Nineveh by the Medes under Cyaxares, which put an end to what is usually called the second Assyrian monarchy, but which was only the principal branch of it, its power, and sometimes its name, was given to Babylon. The history of these two kingdoms is very obscure; the kings of Assyria and Babylon sometimes seeming to be the same, and sometimes different persons. But it is probable, from the harmony that existed between these neighbouring kingdoms, that they were at first, and for a long time, governed by princes of the same family, the younger branch at Babylon acknowledging a kind of subjection to the

elder branch at Nineveh; and that in the end, the more powerful state (Assyria) took possession of the other and ruled it by governors or viceroys. These governors frequently rebelled, and some of them succeeded in making themselves kings; as in the case of Nabopolassar, the father of Nebuchadnezzar, who joined with the Medes in their wars upon Sarac, the last monarch of the Assyrians; for after his death, and the destruction of his capital by Cyaxares, Assyria, as a monarchy, is no longer mentioned.

Under *Nebuchadnezzar*, whose exploits are very fully recorded in Holy Writ, Babylon became the greatest monarchy which the world had yet seen. He conquered Egypt, attacked the Tyrians, then the greatest commercial power in the world, and after a siege of thirteen years, destroyed their capital; but as the Tyrians had in the meantime removed all their effects to a new city, which they built on an island near the mainland, he found nothing but empty walls. He also carried the Jews captive to Babylon, and put an end to their monarchy.

The number of victories obtained by Nebuchadnezzar, the extent of his conquests, and the magnificence of his capital, began at last to intoxicate his mind with pride and vanity. He became insane, and was for a time driven from the society of men. He was, however, restored to his mind and his kingdom, and died in a year after, acknowledging the one living and true God (B.C. 567).

The last king of this great empire was *Belshazzar*, who was slain by Cyrus in the capture of Babylon; and thus ended the first of the four great monarchies described by the prophet Daniel (B.C. 538).

#### NINEVEH, OR THE SECOND ASSYRIAN EMPIRE.

The second Assyrian empire continued to exist with great splendour after the dismemberment of the first.

Nineveh, its capital, was one of the greatest cities of antiquity.<sup>1</sup> Pul, the first Assyrian king mentioned in Scripture, invaded the kingdom of Israel during the reign of Menahem, but departed without committing hostilities, upon receiving a thousand talents of silver. *Tiglath-Pileser*, his successor, invaded and conquered Syria, and exacted tribute from Judah. After a reign of twenty years, he was succeeded by *Shalmanésér*. Hosea, the tributary king of Israel, resolving to shake off the Assyrian yoke, entered into a league with So, king of Egypt; upon which Shalmaneser attacked him with a numerous army, took Samaria, and put an end to the kingdom of Israel (B.C. 721).

*Sennacherib*, on his accession to the throne, marched against Hezekiah, king of Judah, with a powerful army, and reduced several of his fortified towns. He was prevented from attacking Jerusalem by the payment of a tribute, and proceeded against Egypt. He soon however returned, determined to destroy it, but was prevented by the miraculous destruction of his entire army in one night. This event, though obscured in the narration, is confirmed by Herodotus. He himself fled to Nineveh, and was there murdered by his two elder sons. He was succeeded by his third son Esarhaddon, who is favourably mentioned in the book of Esdras. This monarch, as has been already stated, annexed Babylon to the Assyrian empire. He was succeeded by his son Saorduchinus, who, in the Book of Judith, is called *Nebuchodono'sor*. He was attacked by the Medes under Phraortes, but he defeated the Median army, and put their monarch to death. Cyaxares, the son of Phraortes, as has been already mentioned, destroyed Nineveh, and put an end to the Assyrian empire.

---

<sup>1</sup> Nineveh exceeded all the early cities of Asia, except Babylon. Its walls were 100 feet high, and so broad that three chariots could be driven on them abreast. They were forty-eight miles in circuit and defended by 1,500 towers, each 200 feet in height.

## THE MEDES.

Arbaces, having, in conjunction with the governor of Babylon (Belesis), overthrown the first Assyrian empire, took possession of Media. He did not, however, establish any regular or permanent form of government, and the consequence was that the country, after his death, was plunged into anarchy. Wearied with the disorders which such a state of things always produces, the people conferred absolute power upon Dejoces, one of the judges, who had acquired great reputation for the wisdom of his acts, and the justice of his decisions. Dejoces continued to distinguish himself by a strict and severe administration of justice; and with the view of inspiring the people with awe and respect for the regal power, he surrounded his palace with guards, and kept himself secluded from the public view, affecting that state of distant majesty so customary with Eastern monarchs. Access to his person, except on extraordinary occasions, was prohibited; and even then, the persons admitted to an audience were forbidden to look him in the face, or to smile in his presence. But though concealed from the eyes of his subjects, he made himself acquainted with all the affairs of the state by means of emissaries in all the provinces. And to give solemnity and publicity to the administration of justice, he caused all judicial proceedings to be carried on, and decisions to be given, in writing. Hence, according to Herodotus, no crime escaped the knowledge of the prince, or the rigour of the law.

This monarch was the founder of *Ecbatana* and other cities. Before his time the Medes lived in mean villages, or dispersed through the country.

Dejoces was succeeded, after a reign of fifty-three years, by his son *Phraortes*, the Arphaxad of Scripture. This prince, being of a warlike disposition, invaded and

subdued the Persians; and having conquered a large portion of Asia Minor, including a part of the Assyrian empire, he laid siege to Nineveh. But here, his good fortune forsaking him, he perished with the greater part of his army, after a reign of twenty-two years.

*Cyaxares*, the son and successor of *Phraortes*, raised a powerful army to revenge the death of his father by the destruction of Nineveh. But after defeating the Assyrians in battle, and besieging them in their capital, he was obliged to withdraw all his troops for the defence of his own dominions against an irruption of the Scythians. The two armies encountered, but the Medes were soon obliged to give way to the numbers and impetuosity of the Scythians. These barbarians, having no other power to contend with, overran Media, and kept possession of it for twenty-eight years. They even extended their conquests to the adjoining countries, and were only prevented from attacking Egypt by the repeated entreaties and rich presents of *Psammeticus*, the Egyptian monarch.

*Cyaxares* finding himself unable to expel the Scythians by force of arms, had recourse to a treacherous and cruel stratagem. At a general feast, to which all the leaders of the Scythians were invited, the Medes having inebriated their guests, as had been preconcerted, massacred them in this condition; and thus repossessed themselves of the provinces and power which they had formerly lost.

*Cyaxares* having entered into an alliance with *Nebuchadnezzar*, to whom he gave his daughter in marriage, joined his forces to those of the Babylonians and resumed the siege of Nineveh. After a long and vigorous defence, this city was taken and destroyed by the confederate armies; and the power and dominions of this branch of the Assyrian monarchy were transferred to the two collateral empires of the Medes and the Babylonians.

Astyages, the son and successor of Cyaxares, who is supposed to be the Ahasuërus of the Jews, gave his daughter Mandāne in marriage to Cambyzes, a Persian prince or nobleman ; from which union sprung Cyrus, one of the most celebrated monarchs of all antiquity. From this period the history of the Medes is blended with that of the Persians.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

How many kingdoms arose out of the ruins of the first Assyrian empire? Name them, and their founders? Who succeeded Belesis, and when? This event is called in history? When, and by whom, was Babylon annexed to the Assyrian empire? When, and how, did it recover its independence and power? How is the confusion between the history of these two kingdoms accounted for? Who was *Nabopolassar*, and what is said of him? Why is Sarac called the last monarch of the Assyrians? The history of *Nebuchadnezzar*? When did he die? The last king of Babylon? When, and by whom, was he slain? The second Assyrian empire? What description is given of *Nineveh*? What powerful kings of Assyria are mentioned in Scripture? Which of them put an end to the kingdom of Israel, and when? Which of them marched against Jerusalem with a determination to destroy it? How was he prevented? Who was *Esaarhaddon*, and what is said of him? What is said of *Arbaces* after he took possession of Media? What led the people to confer absolute power upon *Dejoces*? How did he act upon being made king? What did *Herodotus* say of him? How long did he reign? Who succeeded him? The Scripture name of *Phraortes*? His character and exploits? How long did he reign, and by whom was he slain? Who succeeded him? What did he attempt? Was he successful? What prevented him? What is said of the *Scythians* with regard to Media? How long did they keep possession of it, and how were they expelled from it? Did *Cyaxares* resume the siege of *Nineveh*? With whom did he form an alliance? The result of their combined attack upon *Nineveh*? To whom were the power and dominions of this branch of the Assyrian monarchy then transferred? Who succeeded *Cyaxares*? His supposed Scripture name? Who was *Mandane*? To whom was she married? What is said of *Cyrus*? Why from this period did the history of the Medes become blended with that of the Persians?



## THE PERSIANS.

Persia, as was before observed, was originally peopled by the family of Elam, the eldest son of Shem, and hence the inhabitants of that country are called in Scripture the *Elamites*. In the Books of Daniel, Esdras, &c., it is called *Pars* or *Pharas*, whence, it is obvious, the term *Persia* is derived. This term originally belonged to a few warlike and independent tribes who occupied a mountainous province of the empire to which they afterwards gave their name. These tribes were either allies or tributaries of the Medes, when Cyrus, the son of Cambyses, conducted an army to the assistance of his uncle Cyaxares, who, upon the death of Astyages, had succeeded to the throne of Media.

The alliance between the Medes and Persians had alarmed the fears and excited the jealousy of Neriglissar, the king of Babylon. He, therefore, sent ambassadors to the Lydians, Phrygians, Carians, Cappadocians, Paphlagonians, and Cilicians, to solicit them to unite with him against a new power which threatened the tranquillity, and aimed at the subjugation, of all Asia. The powers of Asia Minor entering into the feelings and fears of the king of Babylon, united with him against the Medes and Persians. After three years spent in forming alliances, and in making preparations, the hostile armies took the field. In the first battle, after a fierce engagement, in which Neriglissar was slain, Cyrus defeated the Babylonian army and their allies. After the death of the king of Babylon, Cræsus, king of Lydia, being next in dignity, took the command of the vanquished armies, and endeavoured to conduct them in safety from the field. But he was overtaken in his flight by Cyrus, who utterly defeated and dispersed the whole of the allied armies.

In some time after Cræsus, who was as celebrated for

his great power as for his immense riches, took the field against Cyrus, aided by large armies of Babylonians, Egyptians, Greeks, Thracians, and the nations of Asia Minor. With these forces he intended to invade Media; but Cyrus having suddenly and unexpectedly presented himself before him, disconcerted his measures and obliged him at once to join in battle, in which, after a desperate struggle, he was completely defeated. Upon this Croesus fled to Lydia, and shut himself up in Sardis, his capital. But Cyrus followed him thither, and besieged Sardis, which having reduced, he took the unfortunate monarch prisoner,<sup>1</sup> and made his kingdom a province of the Persian empire.

Cyrus having added to his dominions all the kingdoms of Asia Minor, marched into Syria and Arabia, which submitted to his authority. He next entered Assyria for the purpose of reducing Babylon. Labneytus the king (the Belshazzar of Scripture) ventured to meet him in battle; but being defeated, he fled to his capital, to which Cyrus immediately laid siege. This city he took, as was predicted by the prophets, though it was, with great reason, considered impregnable. The walls, built of bricks, cemented by bitumen, were 350 feet high, 87 thick, and 60 miles in circumference. And where these walls were not surrounded by marshes, they were defended by towers filled with armed men. Of these towers there were 250. The city, when Cyrus laid siege to it, was furnished with provisions for twenty years; besides, there was within the walls a large extent of ground appropriated for tillage and pasture.

After two years of fruitless attempts and ineffectual operations, Cyrus succeeded in taking Babylon by an

---

<sup>1</sup> It was under these circumstances that Croesus felt and acknowledged the truth of the saying of Solon, that "no person ought to be called fortunate before his death."

extraordinary stratagem. On a night which he knew would be devoted by the Babylonians to feasting and drunkenness, he had the course of the Euphrates, which flowed through the city, turned into the great lake,<sup>1</sup> made to receive its superfluous waters; and thus having drained, or at least made the river fordable, his troops were enabled to enter the city by its channel. This they did about midnight, both at the place where the river enters, and where it leaves the city. Belshazzar was surprised and slain in the middle of his impious revelry, and "his kingdom," as the prophet had announced to him, "was divided and given to the Medes and Persians."

By the capture of Babylon the Jews were liberated after seventy years' captivity, as had been predicted by the prophet Jeremiah. Cyrus not only permitted them to return to their native country, but encouraged them to rebuild their city and the Temple. Esdras, Nehemiah, and Zerobabel were their leaders on this occasion.

Cyrus succeeded to the empire of the Medes on the death of his uncle Cyaxares, and having extended his dominions from the Indus to the Ægean Sea, he died honoured and beloved, not only by his own people, but by the numerous nations which he had conquered; and so great and so enduring was his fame that we find his name celebrated in the annals of the East, the writings of the Greeks, and the records of inspiration.

Upon the death of Cyrus, Cambyzes, his son, succeeded to the empire. This prince was as foolish and as vicious as his father was wise and virtuous. He conquered Tyre, Cyprus, and Egypt; and marching foolishly through the deserts against the Ammonians and Ethiopians, he lost more than half of his army.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This lake was 35 feet deep, and 36 square miles in extent.

<sup>2</sup> Upwards of 50,000 men were overwhelmed in the sands of the Lybian deserts.

Frantic with rage and disappointment, he returned to Memphis, which he found given up to festivity and rejoicing, on account, as he thought, of his unsuccessful expedition. It was in vain that the magistrates assured him that the appearance of their god Apis among them was the cause of the public rejoicings. He ordered them to be put to death; but having heard the same account from the priests, he desired to see their god who was so kind and condescending as to appear among his votaries. Apis was accordingly introduced, and Cambyzes was so enraged on seeing that their god was a calf, that he drew his sword and killed it on the spot. The Egyptians, who regarded this as an act of the most horrible impiety, affirmed that Cambyzes was immediately seized with madness. But the fact is, that his conduct had always been extravagant, cruel, and frantic.

On his return to Persia, a herald from Susa met his army and ordered him to obey Smerdis, the son of Cyrus, who had been appointed king in his stead. Conscious that his brother Smerdis had been put to death by his own orders, Cambyzes vowed vengeance against the impostor; but an accidental wound from his own sword delivered the world from his cruelty and oppression.

The impostor, who was one of the magi, was dethroned and slain by seven Persian nobles, who had entered into a conspiracy for the purpose; and the crown, as had been agreed upon, was given by lot to one of their number, namely Darius, the son of Hystaspes.

Darius reconquered the kingdom of Babylon, which had revolted, and subdued Thrace, Macedonia, and a portion of India; but he was as unsuccessful in his attempts to subjugate the Scythians as he was afterwards in his wars against the Greeks. From this period the history of Persia becomes blended with that of the Greeks.

Xerxes, his son, is only known by his disastrous and inglorious wars against Greece.

The last prince of this line was Darius Codomanus, who was conquered by Alexander the Great (B.C. 332).

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION

By whom was Persia originally peopled? Its Scripture names? The term originally belonged to? How did they become connected with the Medes? To what great wars did the alliance between the Medes and Persians lead? The result of these wars? The exploits of Cyrus, and the extent of his conquests? Give a description of Babylon? How did Cyrus succeed in capturing it? The result of the capture of Babylon as regarded the Jews? Had these events been foretold by the prophets? Who were the leaders of the Jews at that time, and what did Cyrus encourage them to do? Did Cyrus succeed to the empire of the Medes? The extent of his dominions at his death? His character? What proofs are given of his great celebrity? Who succeeded Cyrus? His character and history? Who succeeded Cambyses? Who was Darius? In what wars was he successful; in what, unsuccessful? Who succeeded him? What is said of him? Who was the last prince of this line? By whom was he conquered, and when?

#### EGYPT.

Egypt, as already stated, was originally peopled by Mizraim, the son of Ham, and his descendants. The first king of Egypt is said to have been Menes, probably the same as Osiris, who was worshipped by the Egyptians. Of the successors of Menes, Moeris and Amosis were the most distinguished. The former had an immense artificial lake made, into which the waters of the Nile were turned when the inundations were dangerous or too abundant; and from which the country was irrigated when the inundations from the river were insufficient for the purpose; and the latter monarch subdued and expelled "the shepherd kings," a barbarous people from Arabia, who had overrun Egypt, and kept possession of the lower and best parts of the country for many years (from, it is supposed, 2084 B.C. to 1825 B.C.)

But the most illustrious of the Egyptian kings was Sesostris, who subdued Lybia, Ethiopia, Arabia, and the greater part of Asia. Herodotus mentions his having also conquered the Scythians and Thracians in Europe. Several pillars were standing in the time of that historian, on which were inscribed these words, "SESOSTRIS, KING OF KINGS, SUBDUED THIS COUNTRY BY HIS ARMS." The vanquished kings and leaders he is said to have usually treated with great humanity; but when he proceeded to the temple, or entered his capital, he caused them to be harnessed to his chariot, four abreast, instead of horses. Sesostris is said to have distinguished himself by his legislation and domestic administration, as well as by his foreign conquests. The exact time in which Sesostris lived is not known, but it is supposed that it was about 1650 years before the Christian era. It was about 300 years before his time that Abraham visited Egypt, and even at that early period of the world it was a regular kingdom under a "Pharaoh" and his princes." The connexion of the Israelites with Egypt, from the time of Joseph to their "*Exodus*" or departure from it under Moses, is well known.

In the earliest periods of the world Egypt was distinguished for civilization and science. Moses, we are told, was learned in all the wisdom of the Egyptians; and Egypt was the school in which all the early Greek philosophers, as Thales, Pythagoras, Lycurgus, and Solon, were instructed. In fact, much of our present knowledge may be traced to the Egyptians, for what they taught the Greeks has come down to us through the Romans.

The power and opulence of the ancient Egyptian kings may be inferred from the magnificent and stu-

---

<sup>1</sup> The name *Pharaoh*, which, it is said, denotes *sovereign power* was common to the early Egyptian kings.

pendous works which they executed; such as the artificial lakes and immense canals made to receive the waters of the Nile; the catacombs or subterranean vaults of prodigious extent; the labyrinth, which consisted of twelve palaces and three thousand apartments of marble, all under ground, or covered over, and communicating with each other by innumerable passages, the intricacies of which occasioned its name; and, above all, the stupendous pyramids, which are still regarded as the wonder of the world. The base of the largest pyramid covers, it is stated, about ten acres of ground, and its perpendicular height is above 500 feet, and if measured obliquely, that is, from the base to the summit, 700 feet.

Egypt was afterwards broken up by factions and civil wars into several kingdoms or principalities; but the most permanent and natural divisions of it were into Upper,<sup>1</sup> Middle,<sup>1</sup> and Lower Egypt. The latter was, and still is, called the Delta, from its resemblance to the Greek letter  $\Delta$  or D. Strictly speaking, the Delta is included between the eastern and western branches of the Nile, and the Mediterranean Sea; but the name is extended to the whole of Lower Egypt.

About the year 671 B.C., twelve kings reigned conjointly in Egypt, by whom, it is said, the Labyrinth was built. But Psammeticus, one of their number, having slain or expelled all the others, made himself sole king of Egypt. He was assisted in this by a body of piratical adventurers from Ionia and Caria, who had been driven on the Egyptian coast<sup>2</sup> by a tempest. In

---

<sup>1</sup> Upper Egypt was called Thebais, from its capital the celebrated Thebes; and Middle Egypt, Heptanomis, from the seven *regencies* into which it was divided. The capital of Heptanomis was Memphis; that of the Delta, Sais.

<sup>2</sup> Psammeticus, being suspected by the other kings, had been banished to the lower or marshy parts of Egypt; so that the means taken to punish him became instrumental to his success.

return for these services Psammeticus granted settlements in Egypt to his Grecian auxiliaries, and opened his ports to the commerce of all nations. Before his time all strangers were prohibited from entering an Egyptian harbour. From this period the history of Egypt became more authentic.

Necho, the son of Psammeticus, commenced a canal from the Nile to the Red Sea, but was deterred from completing it by an oracle.<sup>1</sup> It was afterwards completed by Darius, the Persian. It extended from a little above Bubastis, near the modern Cairo, on the Nile, to Patmos, a city of Arabia, not far from the locality of Suez. It was cleared out and renewed by the Ptolemies, Trajan, and the Arabs, in the time of Omar, but it has long since been choked up by the sands of the desert.

It was by this monarch's order that a number of Phœnician vessels are said to have sailed round Africa, from the Red Sea to the Mediterranean.

Egypt became subject to the Assyrian empire in the reign of Nebuchadnezzar (610 B.C.); and in the year 525 B.C., its last native king, Psammeticus, having been conquered and dethroned by Cambyzes, the son of Cyrus, it became a province of Persia, though it succeeded once or twice in freeing itself from the Persian yoke.

As a Persian province, Egypt was attacked by Alexander the Great, who, having subdued it, built the celebrated city of Alexandria, which exists to this day. After his death Ptolemy Lagus, one of his generals, became king of Egypt (323 B.C.), and it continued to be governed by his successors, who generally took his name till the death of Cleopatra (29 B.C.), when it became a province of the Roman empire.

Egypt continued to be a province, and the granary

<sup>1</sup> It was apprehended that the country would be inundated by the Red Sea, should such a canal be made.



of the Roman empire (of the eastern) till it was conquered by the Arabs under Amrou, the general of Omar, the second caliph of the Saracens or Mohammedans, who, in the year 642, took its capital, Alexandria, by storm, after a siege of fourteen months, and with a loss of 23,000 men. It was this barbarian<sup>1</sup> who destroyed the famous Alexandrian library which was founded by Ptolemy Soter, the son of Ptolemy Lagus, and enriched by his successors to such an extent, that when Egypt fell under the dominion of the Romans it contained 700,000 volumes. In connexion with this library was a celebrated school of philosophy which had flourished since the time of the Ptolemies. It was broken up and dispersed by the same bigoted barbarians.

Egypt continued subject to the caliphs of Bagdad till the dismemberment of the caliphate in the end of the tenth century. It then became a kingdom under a new Arab dynasty, called the *Fatimite* caliphs, who possessed it till the year 1171, when the last of these princes was conquered and dethroned by Saladin, the general of the *Turcomans*. Saladin established a new dynasty which, in the year 1230, was extinguished by

---

<sup>1</sup> Or rather by the caliph himself: for when the philosopher Philopónus conjured Amrou to preserve it, he consulted Omar, who returned for answer, "If these books are conformable to the Koran, they are useless; if they are contrary to it, they are detestable;" so that the inference, in either case, was that they should be destroyed.

So extensive was this precious collection of learning and science, that the paper or parchment of the books sufficed, we are informed, to heat the public baths of Alexandria for six months.

But the Arabs in less than a century afterwards began to have a taste for literature, and lamented the loss of what their fathers had destroyed. They collected with care the manuscripts which had escaped the flames and their barbarity; and during the reign of Almanasor, Haroun al Raschid (Haroun the Just), and his son Almamon, Bagdat their capital became the seat of learning, as Alexandria had been under the Ptolemies.

the *Mamelukes*, a race of slaves from Circassia, whom the successors of Saladin had purchased to form their bodyguard. These military slaves appointed one of their own body as their sovereign, under the title of *Soldan* or *Sultan*, and were long the tyrants of this ill-fated country; and indeed few of their own Soldans died a natural death. In the space of 257 years no less than forty-seven Soldans were put to death or deposed.

In 1517 the Turks, under Selim II., conquered the Mamelukes, and put an end to their dominion; but left the survivors a considerable share in the government of the country under pachas sent from Constantinople.

In 1798 the French invaded and conquered Egypt, but in three years after they were expelled from it by the British, who restored it to the Turks. Soon after this event the celebrated Mehemet Ali was appointed pacha of Egypt, of which, by a combination of talent and treachery, courage and cruelty, he has long since rendered himself absolute master. It is true that he has done much, and is still doing every thing in his power, to promote commerce, civilization, and science in the countries over which he rules; but his former cruelties, particularly his butchery of the Mameluke Beys, whom he had invited to partake of his hospitality, must for ever be a blot upon his name. In short, what was said of Augustus is in some degree applicable to him, namely, "that it would have been well for mankind that he had never been born, or that he would never die."<sup>1</sup>

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

By whom was Egypt originally peopled? The first king of Egypt? He was supposed to be the same as? What is said of *Ossiris*? Who were the most distinguished of his successors? What were they famous for? Who were the "Shepherd kings?" What part of Egypt did they take possession of? How long did they occupy the country? The most illustrious of the Egyptian

---

<sup>1</sup> Mehemet Ali died since this was written.

kings? The extent of his conquests? What does Herodotus say on this subject? How did he usually treat the kings whom he subdued? How did he use them on state occasions? What was his character as a legislator and statesman? Is the exact time in which he lived known? The supposed date? Was it before or after his time that Abraham visited Egypt? What proofs have we from Scripture of the early civilization and power of Egypt? The meaning of the term *Pharaoh*? How do you show that we are indebted to the ancient Egyptians for much of our present knowledge? Mention some of the Greek philosophers who studied in Egypt? What monuments still remain of the power and opulence of the ancient kings of Egypt? Describe some of the stupendous works which they executed.

What broke up Egypt afterwards into several kingdoms? The most permanent and natural division of Egypt? The meaning of the term *Delta*? Its strict and extended meaning as applied to Egypt? The capital of Upper Egypt? Of Middle Egypt? Of the Delta? By whom, and when, was the Labyrinth built? Describe it? Which of these joint kings became sole monarch of Egypt, and by what means? What great changes did he effect in the foreign policy of Egypt? What is said of the history of Egypt from this period? Who was *Necho*? What did he attempt? What deterred him? What was the oracle? Who completed it afterwards? In what direction did it extend? By whom was it afterwards cleared out? Does it exist now? What great attempt in navigation was made during his reign? Was it successful? Why was the *Periplus* of Africa doubted by the ancients? What inference do we draw from these doubts?<sup>1</sup>

By whom was Egypt annexed to the Assyrian empire and when? When did it become a province of Persia? The name of its last native king? By whom was he dethroned? What led Alexander the Great to attack Egypt? What memorial of his conquest of it still exists? Who became king of Egypt after the death of Alexander? Who were his successors? The best of the line? When did it become a province of the Roman empire? How long did it continue as such, and what was it regarded as? In what year was Alexandria taken by the Arabs? What was the argument used by Amrou, or rather by Omar, for

---

<sup>1</sup> The *Periplus* was doubted by the ancients, principally because the voyagers asserted that they had seen wool growing upon trees in several places where they landed; and also, because they said that while sailing round the south of Africa, the sun at noon appeared north from their zenith.

destroying the famous library of Alexandria? By whom was this library founded, and by whom enriched? Its extent when Egypt fell under the dominion of the Romans? In addition to the library, what other great loss did learning and science sustain by the fall of Alexandria? Did the Arabs afterwards endeavour to make amends for the barbarity of their fathers? How? In whose reign? What did their capital Bagdad become? How long did Egypt continue subject to the caliphs of Bagdad? What then did it become? Who was *Saladin*? When did he conquer Egypt; and by whom, and when, was his dynasty extinguished? Who were the *Mamelukes*? What is said of their *Soldans*? By whom, and when, were the Mamelukes conquered? By whom was Egypt conquered in 1798? By whom were the French driven from Egypt? What is said of *Mehemet Ali*?

#### THE PHœNICIANS.

The Phœnicians, who were descended from *Sidon*, the son of Canaan, were the first people in the world that became rich and powerful by **COMMERCE**. Their position, perhaps, led them to adopt this line of life, as the conquests of Joshua and his successors confined them to the sea-coast, and prevented them from practising agriculture. Their chief cities were Tyre and Sidon, of which frequent mention is made both in the Old and New Testaments. The Phœnicians, in the earliest periods of history, visited not only all the coasts of the Mediterranean and *Ægean* Seas, but, passing through the Straits of Hercules (*Gibraltar*), traded with Spain, Gaul, and the British Islands. In most of the places to which they traded they planted colonies, the most distinguished of which was the celebrated **CARTHAGE**, so long the powerful rival of Rome.

To the Phœnicians the world is indebted for several useful inventions, such as the manufacture of glass; and to Cadmus, the Phœnician, the Greeks owed much of their civilization, and, it is generally supposed, the art of writing.

Tyre, the chief city, was taken and destroyed by Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, as foretold by the Prophet Ezekiel; and afterwards, by Alexander the

Great. The first city was on the continent ; the second on an island, about half a mile from the coast.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

From whom were the Phœnicians descended? For what were they distinguished? What probably led them to adopt this line of life? Was it from choice or necessity that they originally occupied the sea-coast? The extent of their voyages in the earliest periods of history? The most celebrated of the Phœnician colonies? Where was it, and for what was it distinguished? For what is the world indebted to the Phœnicians? What is said of Cadmus? By whom was the first city of Tyre taken and destroyed? By whom was this foretold? How did the position of the second city differ from that of the first? By whom was it taken?

GREECE.

The first inhabitants of Greece were the Pelasgi, Lelæges, and other barbarous tribes who originally migrated from Asia through Thrace and Thessaly.

In process of time they formed themselves into a number of states, governed by kings or princes called *tyranni*. The continued stream of migration from the East contributed to civilize them. Thus Cecrops at the head of an Egyptian colony, settled in Attica; Danaus, another Egyptian, from whom the Greeks were called *Danai*, in Argos; Cadmus, the Phœnician, who introduced alphabetic writing into Greece, in Bœotia; and Pelops, a Phrygian prince, in *Peloponnesus*,<sup>1</sup> to which he gave his name.

The most ancient kingdoms of Greece were Sicyon and Argos. The former is said to have been founded by Egialeus, 2089 years before the Christian era; and the latter by Inachus, in the year 1856 B.C.

Cecrops became king of Attica in the year 1556 B.C. He divided the country into twelve districts, and instituted the celebrated court of justice called the Areopagus, which we find in existence in the time of St.

---

<sup>1</sup> Peloponnesus, that is, the island of *Pelops*. Its original name was *Apis*; and it is now called the *Mores*.

**Paul.** **AMPHICTYON**, the third king of Attica, established the *Amphictyonic* council, which consisted of deputies from the different states of Greece, who met twice a year to consult for the common interest. This council had a great effect in uniting the Greeks, and in inspiring them with a feeling in favour of their common country, of which they gave glorious proofs during the Persian invasions.

**THESEUS**, a succeeding king of Attica, united the twelve districts of Cecrops into one, making Athens the capital. This was about 1234 years before the Christian era; and about thirty years previous to this, was the famous Argonautic expedition under Jason, Theseus, Hercules, and other Grecian heroes. The account of this expedition is largely blended with fable. It was said to have been in search of a celebrated fleece of gold; but commercial enterprise or predatory warfare seems to have been its real object.

**CODRUS**, who devoted himself to death for his country, was the last king of Athens (B.C. 1070). After him the regal dignity was abolished, and a chief magistrate elected under the name of Archon or ruler. At first, his authority was for life; afterwards for ten, and subsequently for one year. At last, nine Archons were chosen, the chief of whom was called *the Archon*, and the current year was called by his name.

The kingdom of Thebes was founded by **CADMUS** from Phœnicia, who built that city, and introduced alphabetic writing into Greece (B.C. 1493).

The war against Thebes was the first instance of a league among the Grecian states. The cause of it was a contest between Polyneices and Eteocles, the sons of Œdipus, for the throne of Thebes. The brothers killed each other, and most of the confederate chiefs were slain, but their sons, the Epigōni,<sup>1</sup> as they were called,

---

<sup>1</sup> Epigōni, that is, sons or descendants.

Great. The first  
on an island, ab.

From whom were they distinguished? This line of life? originally occupied the earliest periods in the colonies? Phenician colonies? For what is distinguished? What is said of Cadmus taken and destroyed? the position of the second whom was it taken?

The first inhabitants  
Lelèges, and other barl  
migrated from Asia through

In process of time they  
number of states, governed  
*turani*. The continued str  
East contributed to civilize  
the head of an Egyptian  
Danaus, another Egyptian,  
were called *Danai*, in Argos;  
who introduced alphabetic  
Pecotia; and Pelops, a Phrygian  
to which he gave his name

The most ancient kingdoms of  
and Argos. The former is said  
by Egialeus, 2089 years before  
the latter by Ionides, 1000 years

Cancers began

He divided the  
tuned the cel  
pains, which

1. Pelopon  
was 1200

after. which terminated in  
The misfortunes of the family  
The subject of several Greek tragedies.  
the famous expedition against Troy  
the princes of Greece under Ag-  
of Troy, which lasted ten years,  
authority of the poet Homer, who  
ent in his well-known poem the  
the subject of it is the destruc-  
(1184).

ts had begun to send co-  
nd Sicily. The *Aeolians*  
s in *Aeolia* to which  
Ephesus, &c., &c.  
nd Locri in Italy;

image, reli-  
country.  
applied

be abolished; and SOLON, one of the seven of Greece, was chosen as their legislator. Solon, which remained in force as long as Greece, had a great effect in character of its inhabitants. The Athenians shared from all the other inhabitants of the love of literature, and their cultivation which they brought to the highest state

and Epaminondas THEBES became a powerful state of Greece. But as with those brave and illustrious on their death.

Epaminondas (B.C. 363) MACE-  
regarded by the Greeks rather  
than as a part of Greece,  
pre-eminence under Philip,  
and his celebrated son, Alex-  
ander, of twenty-five, left his  
army of 35,000 men for the

reece was conquered by  
the province; and so it  
must was put an end  
by the Turks, in  
and, though the  
attempts to shake  
oppressors, it  
see page 41.

they migrate  
of time they  
or tyrant originally  
more and more?  
followers settle?  
What is said of  
modern name



renewed the war ten years after, which terminated in the capture of Thebes. The misfortunes of the family of Œdipus are the subject of several Greek tragedies.

Shortly after this the famous expedition against Troy was undertaken by the princes of Greece under Agamemnon. The siege of Troy, which lasted ten years, rests chiefly on the authority of the poet Homer, who has celebrated the event in his well-known poem the *Iliad*, so called, because the subject of it is the destruction of *Ilium* or Troy (B.C. 1184).

Before this time the Greeks had begun to send colonies to Asia Minor, Italy, and Sicily. The *Æolians* founded Smyrna and other cities in *Æolia* to which they gave their name; the *Ionians*, Ephesus, &c., in *Ionia*; and the *Dorians*, Tarentum and Locri in Italy, and Syracuse and Agrigentum in Sicily.

The states of Greece were united by language, religion, and a feeling in favour of their common country. This union was produced principally by the Amphictyonic council, and the celebration of the various games to which they all resorted, and during which all hostilities were suspended. These were the Olympic, the Isthmian, the Pythian, and the Nemæan games. The union of the Grecian states, however, was rather against the invaders of their common country. Amongst themselves there were often bitter jealousies and deadly wars.

**SPARTA** or **LACEDÆMON** was the first state which obtained an ascendancy over the others. The military superiority of this state was owing to the effects produced by the celebrated laws of Lycurgus, which continued in force for about five hundred years.

In imitation of the Spartans, the inhabitants of **ATHENS** solicited Draco, a man of high character for wisdom and integrity, to draw up a code of laws for them. The laws of Draco punished all crimes equally with death; and hence they were said to have been written with blood. Their excessive severity soon caused

them to be abolished; and SOLON, one of the seven wise men of Greece, was chosen as their legislator. The laws of Solon, which remained in force as long as Athens continued a free state, had a great effect in forming the character of its inhabitants. The Athenians were distinguished from all the other inhabitants of Greece, by their love of literature, and their cultivation of the fine arts, which they brought to the highest state of perfection.

Under Pelopidas and Epaminondas THEBES became the leading and most powerful state of Greece. But as its glory had arisen with those brave and illustrious leaders, so it declined on their death.

After the death of Epaminondas (B.C. 363) MACEDONIA, which had been regarded by the Greeks rather as a barbarous province than as a part of Greece, acquired great power and pre-eminence under Philip, an artful, but able prince, and his celebrated son, Alexander the Great; who, at the age of twenty-five, left his native country with an army of 35,000 men for the conquest of the world.

About the year 146 B.C., Greece was conquered by the Romans, and converted into a province; and so it continued till the Empire of the East was put an end to by the capture of Constantinople by the Turks, in 1453, to whom it became subject; and, though the Greeks often made the most heroic attempts to shake off the yoke of their cruel and fanatical oppressors, it was only in 1830 that they succeeded. See page 41.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The first inhabitants of Greece? Where did they migrate from, and how did they enter Greece? In process of time they formed themselves into? The term *tyrannus* or *tyrant* originally meant? What contributed to civilize them more and more? Who was *Cecrops*, and where did he and his followers settle? Who was *Danaus*, and where did he settle? What is said of *Cadmus*? What of *Pelops*? The original, and modern name

of *Peloponnesus*? The most ancient kingdoms of Greece? By whom and when were they founded? The first king of Attica? How long was this before the Christian era? How did he divide the country? What celebrated court did he institute? What proof have we of its long continuance? By whom was the *Amphictyonic* council established? Describe it, and state the effects produced by it? What king united the twelve districts of Cecrops into one, and made Athens the capital? The date of this? Who were the leaders in the famous Argonautic expedition? When did it take place? The fabled object of it? The real object of it? The last king of Athens? For what was he distinguished? The date of this? What form of government was then established? The meaning of the term *Archon*? Was the authority of the Archon for life? How was it limited afterwards? Was the number increased? To how many? The chief Archon was called? To what was his name given?

By whom and when was Thebes founded? For what else was Cadmus famous? The first instance of a league among the Grecian states was occasioned by? The cause of the Theban war? Which of the brothers succeeded? By whom was the war renewed, and when? The meaning of the term *Epigoni*? The result of the war of the Epigoni? What is said of the misfortunes of *Ædipus* and his family? When did the expedition against *Troy* take place? Who was the leader on the occasion? How long did the siege last? By what poet has the event been celebrated, and in what poem? Why called the *Iliad*? What colonies had the Greeks sent to Asia Minor, Italy, and Syracuse before this time? What countries in Asia Minor owe their names to Greek colonists? By what bonds were the states of Greece united? The union in favour of their common country was principally produced by? Name and describe the Grecian games? Were the Grecian states united among themselves?

What was the first state that obtained an ascendancy over the others? The military superiority of Sparta was owing to? How long did the laws of *Lycurgus* continue in force? Who was the first Athenian lawgiver? His character? The character of his laws? The cause of their failure? Who was next chosen as their legislator? Who was he? How long did his laws continue in force? Their effect upon the Athenians? How were they distinguished from all the other inhabitants of Greece? Under whom did Thebes become the leading and most powerful state of Greece? Did it continue long so? Why not? The next state that took the lead? Was Macedonia considered a part of Greece? What is said of Philip, and what of his son?

## THE ROMANS.

Rome was founded by Romulus, from whom it took its name, about 750 years before the Christian era. It was at first governed by kings, of whom there were seven; subsequently by consuls chosen annually by the people; and in the end by emperors. The regal power was abolished (B.C. 508) in consequence of the tyranny and crimes of Tarquinius Superbus and his family; and the consular or democratic form of government then established, continued from that period till the time of Julius Cæsar, who, by making himself perpetual dictator (B.C. 48), usurped the sovereign authority. After him Augustus and a long line of emperors succeeded.

Rome was at first very small, but the daring and martial spirit of its inhabitants, originally either adventurers or outlaws, soon gave it an ascendancy over the petty states by which it was surrounded. They were constantly at war; and almost every war in which they were engaged brought them an accession of territory and power, till in the end they established their dominion over the whole of Italy. Elated with success, the warlike Romans became ambitious of foreign conquests; and the fertile island of Sicily, then the granary of the Carthaginians, was the first territory out of Italy which they became desirous of possessing. This led to the celebrated Punic wars which terminated in the destruction of Carthage (B.C. 146). Having subdued their powerful and hated rivals, the Carthaginians, the spirit of conquest led the victorious Romans from country to country, till the whole world became subject to their sway. About the period of the Christian era the Roman power was at its height, but it soon after began to decline; and in the fifth century (476) the *Heruli*, under their king or leader, Odoacer, took possession of Rome and Italy, and thus

put an end to the Roman empire in the west. Odoacer reigned as "king of Italy" for seventeen years, when he was slain by Theodoric the celebrated king of the Ostrogoths or Eastern Goths. Theodoric established the kingdom of the Goths in Italy; and having embraced Christianity, he reigned at Rome with great wisdom and moderation till his death (A.D. 526). In about twenty-six years after, Justinian by his generals, Belisarius and Narses, recovered Italy from the Goths, and annexed it to the Eastern empire under an exarch or viceroy, who resided at Ravenna. Narses was the first exarch (552).

In 568, the Lombards invaded Italy under their king or leader Alboin, and having conquered the greater part of it, established the kingdom of Lombardy. In 753, the Lombards were successfully attacked by Pepin king of France; and in 772, their kingdom in Italy was entirely overthrown by his son Charlemagne, who afterwards annexed Italy to the Empire of the West (800).

The Eastern empire continued to exist till about the middle of the fifteenth century (1453), when Constantinople was taken by the Turks.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

By whom, and when, was Rome founded? Its first form of government? Its second? Its third? How many kings were there? Why was the regal power abolished, and when? When was the consular or democratic form of government abolished, and by whom? After his usurpation who succeeded? How did Rome become so great from such small beginnings? What led to the Punic wars? When was Carthage destroyed? When was the Roman power at its height? How and when was it broken up? Who was Odoacer? How long did he reign? By whom was he slain, and what was the next kingdom established in Italy? What is said of Theodoric? When, and by whom was Italy recovered from the Goths? By what name was it annexed to the Eastern empire? The first exarch? By whom, and when was the kingdom of Lombardy established in Italy? What is said of Pepin, and what of Charlemagne with regard to the Lombards? When, and by whom was the Empire of the East broken up?

## GOTHS, VANDALS, HUNS, ETC.

The BARBAROUS TRIBES which overran and extinguished the Roman empire in the west, came not merely from the *north* of Europe, but also from the central and eastern parts of it; and even from that vast tract of country, called vaguely in ancient times *Scythia*, and afterwards, Tartary and Mongolia.

Amongst the first of these tribes which advanced upon the Roman empire were the *Vandals*, *Suevi*, and *Alans*, who, uniting together, passed through France (then called *Gaul*) and took possession of Spain; the Vandals, of the southern parts of the country; the Suevi, of the west; and the Alans of the north-east (A.D. 407). The Vandals subsequently, upon being conquered by the Goths, passed over into Africa where they established a powerful kingdom; from which they afterwards made irruptions into Sicily and Italy, and, under Genseric their king, took and pillaged Rome (A.D. 455). They were subdued, and their kingdom in Africa overturned by Belisarius, the celebrated general of Justinian (A.D. 527).

Next came the warlike and powerful tribes of the *Visigoths* or Western Goths, who, under Alaric their celebrated king, overran Italy, took and pillaged Rome (A.D. 410); and ultimately, established their empire in Spain, from which they expelled, or rendered subject to their rule, the Vandals, Suevi, and Alans. The Gothic kingdom in Spain continued till the invasion and conquest of that country by the Saracens or Moors (A.D. 713).

But the *Huns* were the chief cause of those vast migrations which led to the downfall of the Roman empire. Coming originally from the great central plateau of Asia, they drove before them the Goths, Vandals, Sarmatians, and Germans; who were thus precipitated in vast numbers upon the confines of the

Roman empire. Of all those barbarous tribes the Huns were the most formidable and sanguinary, Under Attila, their king, who, from his cruelties and havoc of the human race, was called the "Scourge of God," they ravaged with fire and sword the greater part of Europe. After his death (A.D. 453) his empire was broken up; but his principal followers retained possession of Pannonia, to which they gave the name of *Hungary*.

#### HERULI.

In the year 476 the *Heruli*, under their king or leader, Odoacer, took possession of Rome and Italy, and thus put an end to the Roman empire in the west (A.D. 476). Odoacer reigned as "king of Italy" for seventeen years, when he was slain by Theodoric the Great, who established the kingdom of the Ostrogoths, or *Eastern Goths*, in Italy. See Sketch of the History of the Romans.

#### SLAVONIANS.

The *Slavonians*, or Slavonians, were the last of the barbarous tribes from the East who settled in Europe. They left their native country, *Sarmatia*, about the year 518, and established themselves in the *east* of Europe generally, in which their race and language is still prevalent [as in the Austrian dominions,<sup>1</sup> Eastern Prussia, and a large portion of Russia. See Sketch of the History of Poland; and also that of Prussia].

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

Where did the barbarous tribes who overran the Roman empire come from? Who were the first, and what did they do? The date of the occupation of Spain by the Vandals, Suevi, and Alans? What part of the country did they each take possession of? The next tribes that came? The meaning

<sup>1</sup> Of the entire population of the Austrian Empire, nearly one-half are *Slavonians*. They form the great majority in Illyria, Bohemia, Moravia, Silesia, Galicia, Dalmatia, Croatia, and Slavonia.

of the term *Visigoths*? Who was their king, and when did he take and pillage Rome? Where did they ultimately establish an empire, and how long did it continue? The date of the Saracen invasion? What became of the Vandals after they were driven from Spain by the Goths? Under what king, and when, did they take and pillage Rome? By whom were they afterwards subdued?

What is said of the *Huns*? Where did they come from? Their character? Their leader? What was he called? How were they the chief cause of the downfall of the Roman empire? Upon the death of Attila, where did his followers settle? *Hungary* was formerly called? What tribe put an end to the Roman empire in the west, and when? The name of their king? What title did Odoacer assume? How long did he reign, and by whom was he slain? What kingdom did Theodoric establish in Italy? By whom and when was Italy recovered from the Goths, and annexed to the Eastern Empire? What is said of the Slavonians? In what part of Europe did they settle? In what countries are their race and language still prevalent? Of the population of the Austrian Empire, what portion do they form.

#### THE SARACENS.

In the beginning of the seventh century Mahomet became ambitious of giving what he called a new religion to his countrymen, the Arabs. The book which contains it is called the *Koran* or *Al-Koran*, which he pretended was given him, chapter by chapter, by the angel Gabriel. The magistrates of Mecca, his native city, convinced of his imposture, and suspecting that he had some design upon the government, resolved to arrest him, but he having received information of their intentions, fled to Medina in the year 622. This forms the famous era of the Mahometans, called the *Hegira* or flight, from which they compute their time by lunar months.

At Medina Mahomet was joined by many proselytes, to whom he gave the name of *Mussulmans*, or faithful men; and as he had designed from the first to propagate his religion by the sword, he took care to convert



his followers into soldiers. To prepare them for the conquests he aimed at, and at the same time to indulge them in their propensity for plunder, for which the Arabs have always been noted, he began by attacking and pillaging the armed caravans so frequent in that country; and next, all the towns and tribes that hesitated to acknowledge his authority; so that, in a short time, he succeeded in making himself, either by force or imposture, master of all Arabia. His successors, who were called *Caliphs*, extended his conquests and religion with astonishing rapidity. In a few years they overran and established themselves in Palestine, Syria, Mesopotamia, and Persia, on the one hand; and in Egypt, the Barbary States, Spain, and Sicily, on the other. The fanaticism engendered by the Mahometan religion, and the sensual and voluptuous enjoyments promised in the Koran to all those who should fall in propagating it, account, in a great measure, for its rapid and extensive promulgation.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

Who was Mahomet? When did he commence his impostures? How did he say the chapters of the Koran were communicated to him? What led to his flight from Mecca to Medina? This is called? The date of the *Hegira*? How do the Mahometans compute their time from this era? What did he call his followers and proselytes? The meaning of the term *Mussulmans*? Why did he make soldiers of his disciples? How did he prepare them for the conquests he aimed at? How did he indulge the natural propensity of the Arabs? The result of the system of imposture and force which he pursued? His successors were called? The extent of their conquests in a few years? How is the spread of Mahometanism accounted for?

## SKETCHES OF THE HISTORY OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES IN EUROPE.<sup>1</sup>

### FRANCE.

France was originally peopled by the ancient *Celts*, whom the Romans called *Gauls*. It was conquered by Julius Cæsar about 60 years B.C.; and it continued to form a part of the Roman empire till it was subdued by the *Franks*, under Clovis, who gave it its present name. Clovis was the first king of France, and under him Christianity became the religion of the state. In the year 800, the celebrated *Charlemagne*, or Charles the Great, was crowned Emperor of the West. His conquests extended over Spain, Germany, and the greater part of Italy. But soon after his death, the German empire was separated from France. In 911, the Normans or Northmen (from *Norway*), subdued, and settled in a part of France (*Neustria*), to which they gave its present name, *Normandy*. It was the descendants of the same people who, in 1066, achieved the conquest of England, under William Duke of Normandy.

In 987, Hugh Capet supplanted the reigning family, and became the founder of the third race of French kings. Among the succeeding events in French history may be mentioned the wars with Edward III. and Henry V. of England, which proved most disastrous to France. In the former wars, John, the French monarch, was made prisoner; and the result of the latter was, that Henry was declared heir to the crown of France (in 1420), and on his death, his son, Henry VI., was proclaimed king of it. In a few years after, the French, headed by the celebrated *Joan of Arc*, gained several battles over the English; who, though they were again victorious, were obliged soon after to retire from the country (in 1450). In 1597, Henry IV., King of Na-

---

<sup>1</sup> For the History of Great Britain and Ireland, see page 96.

varre, the first of the house of Bourbon, ascended the throne of France. This great and good prince was assassinated in 1610. Louis XIV. began to reign in 1643, at the age of five years. During his long and prosperous reign, France made great advances in science and literature, and attained a high rank among the nations of Europe. In 1789 the ancient government was overturned by one of the most sanguinary revolutions on record. The king, Louis XVI., was beheaded in 1793, and a republic established, which was in its turn subverted, and General Bonaparte, a Corsican, became the supreme ruler of the nation, under the title of First Consul, in 1799, and in five years after (1804), he became Emperor. His conquests, his military fame, his ambition, and his downfall, are well known. The principal events since that period (1814) are the revolutions of 1830, 1848, and the *coup d'etat* of 1851. By the first, Charles X. lost his throne; by the second, Louis Philippe; and by the third, the present Emperor subverted the Republic, and established a despotism.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The original inhabitants of France? The Romans called them? By whom was it conquered and annexed to the Roman empire? The date of this? Till what period did it continue so? Who was the first king of France, and why was the name given to it? What great change with regard to religion took place under Clovis? What is said of *Charlemagne*? Under his reign the Empire of the west comprised? What was the ancient name of *Normandy*, and why, and when was it changed? What is said of the descendants of these people with regard to England? The founder of the third race of French kings? The date of this event? What other great events in French history are mentioned? On what grounds was Henry VI. of England proclaimed King of France? The date of this event? What is said of *Joan of Arc*? When were the English forced to retire from France? The founder of the House of Bourbon? The date of this event? What is said of Henry IV., and how was his reign terminated? When did Louis XIV. succeed to the throne? What was his age at the time? What is said of his reign? The date and character of the French Revolution? The principal events since, and the date of each?

## SPAIN.

Spain was known to the ancients by the names of *Hispānia* and *Iberia*. It was also, from its *western* situation, called *Hesperia*.

Spain, it is supposed, was originally peopled by the *Iberians* and other Asiatic tribes, traces of whose race and language exist to this day in the Basque Provinces. The Phœnicians at a very early period established colonies in it, as *Gades* (Cadiz); and the Carthaginians subsequently took possession of a great part of it. The Romans drove the Carthaginians from it, and ultimately converted it into a province of their empire.

Upon the breaking up of the Roman Empire it was taken possession of by the Vandals, Suevi, and Alans; and subsequently, by the Visigoths or *Western* Goths (in 477), who erected it into a very powerful kingdom, which existed till the invasion and conquest of the country by the Saracens or Moors in 713. The Moors overran all Spain, except the northern provinces and mountainous districts, and their descendants kept possession of the best part of the country for nearly 800 years. They were finally conquered and driven from Spain by Ferdinand and Isabella (in 1492).

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The ancient name of Spain? What other name had it, and why so called? The original inhabitants were? What is said of the *Iberians*? What traces of their race and language still exist in Spain, and in what part of it? What is said of the Phœnicians, and of the Carthaginians with regard to Spain? What of the Romans? On the breaking up of the Roman empire it was taken possession of by? And subsequently by? The date of the occupation of Spain by the Visigoths? By whom, and when were the Goths conquered? How long did the Saracens or Moors keep possession of Spain? What parts of Spain were exempt from their rule? By whom were they finally driven from Spain, and when?

## RUSSIA.

Russia, anciently *Sarmatia*, is supposed to derive its name from the *Rossi*, a Slavonic tribe, of whom mention is made in the histories of the ninth century. It was successively occupied by the Scythians, Goths, Vandals, Huns, and the other barbarians, who advanced upon, and ultimately overran the Roman empire. In 862, Ruric, a Scandinavian, having united together the independent states or tribes who possessed the country, became the first monarch of Russia. In 976 Vladamir embraced the religion of the Greek Church, and introduced it among his subjects, who had previously been Pagans. About the year 1237, Batto, Khan of the Mongols, took possession of the empire, and for the space of more than two centuries and a half it remained in a state of subjection to him and his successors. But the independence of the empire was re-established by Ivan Basilovitch, who subdued Astrakan and other Tartar provinces. In 1696, Peter the Great, by the death of his brother Ivan, became sole monarch of Russia. He assumed the title of Emperor of all the Russias; and it is to this great prince that the present power of Russia is principally due. Before his time the Russians were little better than barbarians. The extraordinary efforts which he made to introduce civilization among them, and to increase and consolidate the power of the empire are well known.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The ancient name of Russia? Its present name supposed to be derived from? What is said of the *Rossi*? Russia was successively occupied by? What is said of these barbarous tribes? Who was the first monarch of Russia, and how, and when did he become so? When was Christianity introduced into Russia, and in whose reign? Who was Batto? When did he take possession of the empire, and how long did it continue subject to him and his successors? By whom was the independence of the empire re-established? When did Peter the Great begin to reign? What title did he assume? What is said of him and the Russians before his time?

## AUSTRIA.

The Archduchy of Austria formed a part of the ancient *Pannonia*, the *Vindobona* of the Romans being the modern Vienna. *Noricum*, and the country of the *Quadi*, were the Roman names of the other parts of Austria. It was called *Austria*, that is, the *eastern* kingdom with reference to France, under Charlemagne, who was crowned, in the year 800, Emperor of the West. Germany was ruled by French princes till 912, when Conrad, Count of Franconia, was elected king. Otho the Great conquered Bohemia and Italy, and in 962 assumed the title of Emperor of Germany and King of Italy. In 1273, Rodolph, Count of Hapsburg, the founder of the house of Austria, was raised to the Imperial throne. In 1477, the Emperor Maximilian having married Mary, heiress of Charles Duke of Burgundy, the Netherlands became subject to the Austrian empire; and by the marriage of his son, Philip, with Jane, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain, in 1496, the crown of Spain became attached to the house of Austria. In 1516, Charles V., grandson of Maximilian, succeeded to the throne of Spain, and in three years after to the Imperial crown. On his resignation, Spain and the Netherlands devolved to his son, Philip II.; and Austria, Bohemia, and Hungary, to his brother, Ferdinand, who was shortly after elected Emperor of Germany. In 1740, the male branch of the house of Austria became extinct by the death of Charles VI., and the right of his daughter, Maria Theresa, to the crown, under the "Pragmatic Sanction," was disputed, in a war in which most of the powers of Europe were involved. This was terminated in 1748, in the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, when the right of Maria Theresa was acknowledged, and her husband, the Duke of Lorraine, was raised to the Imperial throne under the title of Francis I. In 1806, Francis II. was obliged by Na-

poleon, who had conquered the most of his dominions, to resign the title of Emperor of Germany, and to take in its stead that of Emperor of Austria. See Historic Sketch of Germany.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The names of the countries under the Romans of which Austria formed a part ! The name of *Vienna* is derived from ! When and why was this country called Austria ! When was Germany (including *Austria*) detached from the empire founded by Charlemagne ! Who was Conrad, and what is said of him ! What is said of Otho the Great ! What title did he assume ! The date of this ! The founder of the House of Austria ! The date of his election to the Imperial throne ! How did the Netherlands become subject to Austria, and when ! How Spain, and when ! What is said of Charles V. ! On his resignation what divisions of his empire took place ! Who was Maria Theresa, and under what compact did she claim the crown ! The consequence of this claim ! The result ! The date of the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle ! Who was the husband of Maria Theresa, and under what title was he raised to the Imperial throne ! Who was the last Emperor of Germany, and the first Emperor of Austria ! Who obliged him to resign the former title and to take the latter in its stead ! The date of this !

#### PRUSSIA.

Prussia is supposed to derive its name from the *Pruzzi*, a Slavonic tribe, who occupied the country after the Goths. The *Pruzzi* were, in 1227, subdued by the Teutonic Knights, who, when the Crusades in Palestine failed, waged war against the Pagans in the north of Germany. About 1446, the four principal cities in Prussia, Elbing, Thorn, Königsberg, and Dantzic withdrew their allegiance from the Teutonic Knights, and placed themselves under the protection of Poland. The sovereignty of Prussia thus passed to Poland, which continued to possess it till 1656, when Frederick William, usually called the Great Elector, compelled the King of Poland to declare Prussia an independent state. In 1688, he was succeeded by his son, Frederick, who

made himself King of Prussia in 1701, having put the crown upon his own head. His grandson, Frederick the Great, began to reign in 1740, who, by the energy of his character, and his extraordinary talents, both as a statesman and a warrior, raised Prussia to the rank of one of the "Five Great Powers of Europe."

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

Supposed derivation of the name! Who were the *Prussii*, and by whom, and when were they subdued! What is said of the Teutonic Knights! When did Prussia become subject to Poland, and how! When did Prussia regain her independence, and through whose instrumentality! Who succeeded "the Great Elector!" Who made him king of Prussia, and by whom was he crowned! The date of this event! When did his grandson, Frederick the Great, begin to reign, and what is said of him!

#### POLAND.

About the year 550 this country was taken possession of by the Slavonians (or Slavonians), who were the last of the barbarous tribes from the East who settled in Europe. The name of their leader was Lesko. In the year 700, the people gave the supreme command to Cracus under the name of duke. He was the founder of *Cracow*. His posterity failing in 830, a peasant named Piast was elected duke, who became the founder of a royal dynasty.

In 965, Christianity was introduced into Poland; and in 1384, Jagellon, Grand Duke of Lithuania, who had married the Princess of Poland, was elected king; and because he united his dominions to Poland, the crown was made hereditary in his family. In 1572 the crown became elective on the death of Sigismund Augustus, the last prince of the line of Jagellon. The first choice fell upon Henry of Valois, brother to Charles IX., King of France; but he succeeding to the crown of France, resigned that of Poland; and Stephen Bathori,



Prince of Transylvania was elected his successor. The succeeding contests for the crown of Poland were most injurious to the country; and in the end, fatal to the monarchy; for on the death of each king, the country was generally involved in a war between contending factions who were supported by foreign powers.

The Poles were engaged in frequent wars with the Russians and the Turks; and they were obliged to become tributary to the latter, till by the valour of *John Sobieski*, they were relieved from the humiliating obligation. In 1683, the Poles, under this victorious general, whom they had elected as their king, saved *Vienna*—and perhaps all Europe, from the Turks, who were then in the zenith of their power.

The last king of Poland was Stanislaus Augustus Poniatowski, who was elected in 1764, through the influence of Catharine II., Empress of Russia. A great part of the Polish nation denying the validity of the election, civil dissensions arose which served as a pretext for the felonious intervention of Russia, Prussia, and Austria, who, on this occasion, appropriated to themselves one-third of the ancient kingdom of Poland. This took place in 1772; and in 1795, the remainder of the country was taken possession of by the same powers, notwithstanding the heroic resistance of the gallant *Kosciusko*.

In 1807, Napoleon united a great part of ancient Poland under the name of the Grand Duchy of Warsaw; but in 1814 the greater part of it was transferred to Russia by the Congress of Vienna, under the name of the Kingdom of Poland, of which the Emperor of Russia was to be king. In 1830 the Poles made a heroic attempt to regain their independence; but being finally subdued in the following year, Poland was constituted an integral part of the Russian empire.

In 1846, the free city or small Republic of Cracow, the last remnant of ancient Poland, was taken posses-

sion of by Austria, and in this spoliation Russia and Prussia concurred.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

When did the Slavonians take possession of Poland, and what is said of them? The name of their leader? When did the people give the supreme command to Cracus, and under what name? He was the founder of? When did his posterity fail, and who was the founder of the next dynasty? What is said of Piast? When was Christianity introduced into Poland? Who was Jagellon, and when and how did he become king? Why was the sovereignty made hereditary in his family? When did the crown become elective again? Why? What is said of Henry of Valois, and of Stephen Bathori? The consequences of the contests for the crown of Poland? In what wars were the Poles engaged? What is said of John Sobieski? For what should Europe in general, and Austria in particular, feel grateful to Poland? What is said of Stanislaus Augustus Poniatowski? The pretext of Russia, Prussia, and Austria for the dismemberment of Poland? When did the first partition take place? When the second? What is said of Kosciuszko? What is said of Napoleon with regard to Poland? What of the Congress of Vienna? What of Cracow in 1846?

## GERMANY.

Ancient Germany was inhabited by a number of warlike tribes, chiefly of Gothic or Teutonic origin. They were distinguished by their fierce, persevering, and often successful resistance to the encroachments of the Romans, by whom, even in the plenitude of their power, they were never completely subjugated. The descendants, and even the names of some of the most distinguished of these tribes, exist at the present day, as the *French* from the *Franks*; and the *English* from the *Anglo-Saxons*.

In the year 800, the celebrated Charlemagne, King of France, re-established the Empire of the West; and thus the whole of Germany became subject to his sway. The Franco-Germanic empire founded by Charlemagne, continued till the death of Louis III., the last prince of his line. This occurred in 912; and upon this occasion,

the Five Nations of Germany, as they were then called, the Franks, the Swabians, the Bavarians, the Saxons, and the Lorrainers. determined to choose an emperor for themselves. They accordingly, in a public assembly convened for the purpose, elected Conrad, Count of Franconia, son-in-law of the deceased monarch. Conrad was, therefore, properly speaking, the first Emperor of Germany; and from this period the empire became elective, which often led to bitter contentions, and most destructive wars.

At first, the emperors were chosen by the princes, the lords, and the deputies of cities; but the right of election was afterwards restricted to an Electoral College, which consisted of nine members, namely, the Archbishops of Mentz, Trèves, and Cologne, and the Electors of Bohemia, Saxony, Brandenburg, the Palatinate, Bavaria, and Hanover. These electors were sovereign princes, and they were subject to the emperor only as the head of the great federal body, of which he was sometimes the least powerful member.

In 1272, Rodolph of Hapsburg, a Swiss nobleman, was elected emperor. He acquired for his family the provinces of Austria, Styria, and Carniola; and thus became the founder of the house of Austria. In 1437, Albert, duke of Austria, was elected emperor, and since his time (till the abolition of the title in 1806), the emperors of Germany were chosen from his family. Albert married the daughter of Sigismund, the preceding emperor, and thus added to his patrimonial possessions the kingdoms of Hungary and Bohemia, and other provinces in the north and east of Germany. This accounts for the power and influence of the house of Austria in Germany till of late years. The great rival of Austria at present is Prussia.

In 1806, Francis II. was obliged by Napoleon to resign the crown and title of Emperor of Germany, and to assume the title of Emperor of Austria. This put

an end to the German Empire, and in its stead, the minor princes, some of whom were made kings, were formed into an association, called the Confederation of the Rhine, at the head of which Napoleon placed himself under the title of Protector; and in less than a year after, he obliged them to become his allies against the Prussians, &c. After the downfall of Napoleon in 1814, the Germanic Confederation was established for the purpose of maintaining internally and externally the independence and integrity of each of the German States. The war between Prussia and Austria in 1866 effected great changes in the government of several of the minor German States.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The general name of the barbarous tribes who inhabited ancient Germany! Their character! What is said of them with regard to the Romans! What is said of their descendants! What is said of Charlemagne! When was the Franco-Germanic empire broken up! On what occasion! Who were "the Five Nations of Germany!" Who, strictly speaking, was the first Emperor of Germany! Was there any particular reason for electing Conrad! The consequences of the contests for the Imperial crown! How were the emperors at first chosen! How afterwards! The Electoral College consisted of! Who were the Electors, and what is said of them! What is said of Rodolph of Hapsburg, and when was he elected Emperor! What provinces did he acquire for his family! What is said of Albert, Duke of Austria! What kingdoms and provinces did he acquire for his family, and how! What does this account for! The present great rival of Austria in Germany! What is said of Francis II! What of Napoleon, the Confederation of the Rhine, and the Germanic Confederation!

#### SWEDEN.

Sweden was originally occupied by the *Fins*, and afterwards by the *Goths*, &c. Hence the names *Finmark*,<sup>1</sup> *Finland*, *Gothland*, *Gottenburg*,<sup>2</sup> &c. In 1397,

<sup>1</sup> *Finmark*.—See note on *Denmark*, page 200.

<sup>2</sup> *Gottenburg*, or rather *Gothenburg*.—See note, page 41.

it was, with Norway, united to Denmark under the celebrated Danish Queen Margaret. It remained subject to Denmark till 1523, when it recovered its independence under the famous Gustavus Vasa. Among the succeeding monarchs, Gustavus Adolphus, and Charles XII., were the most celebrated. In 1810, Bernadotte, one of Napoleon's generals, was elected king; and in 1814, Norway was wrested from Denmark by the Allied Sovereigns, and added to Sweden. See the Historical Sketch of Norway.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

Sweden originally occupied by? What people succeeded them? How does this appear? Explain the names *Finmark*, *Gothland*, &c. Under what celebrated Queen was Sweden (with Norway) united to Denmark? The date of this event? When did it regain its independence, and under whom? Who were the most celebrated of the succeeding monarchs? What is said of Bernadotte? When, and by whom was Norway wrested from Denmark and added to Sweden? Why was this done?

#### NORWAY.

Norway was originally peopled by the *Fins* and *Laps*, who in after times were driven to the northern extremities by the *Goths*. In 875, Harfager or the *Fair-haired*, united the petty states of Norway into one monarchy, and from that period (except during the time it was subject to Canute the Great, in 1028), it was governed by its own kings till the year 1397, when it was annexed to Denmark by the famous Union of Calmar. In 1814 it was annexed to Sweden by the Congress of Vienna; but it is still a distinct kingdom, and governed by its own laws. See the Historical Sketch of Denmark.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

Norway originally peopled by? By whom were they driven northward? What is said of Harfager? The date of this event? From that period to what year was Norway governed by its own kings? The exception to this? The union of Calmar? The date of this?

When, and by whom was Norway annexed to Sweden ? Is Norway really subject to Sweden ?

#### DENMARK.

The peninsula of Jutland, which was called the *Chersonesus Cimbrica* by the Romans, was at that period occupied by the *Cimbri*, a German tribe, but originally from the East. Little is known of Denmark till the 8th century after the Christian era. About the beginning of this century, and for two hundred years after, they and their neighbours, the Norwegians, were notorious for their piracies, and for their predatory descents upon the coasts of England, France, Flanders, and Germany. They were then known by the name of Nordmans, Northmans, or Normans ; and they called themselves *Vikings* or Sea-Kings.

In 832 they landed in England, and established themselves in a portion of it ; and subsequently, they were for a time in possession of the whole kingdom. [See Sketch of England, page 96.] In 911, under Rollo or Rolf, their celebrated leader, they made a descent upon the northern coast of France ; and gave their name to *Normandy*. See page 167. They subsequently proceeded to Spain, Italy, and Sicily, spreading terror wherever they went, by their courage, ferocity, and rapacity.

In the year 1000, Sweyn, a warlike prince, conquered a part of Norway ; and in 1013 he invaded England, and took possession of a portion of it. Having died the year after, his son Canute completed his conquests, and became king of Denmark, Norway, and England. Under Canute, the power of Denmark reached its highest point, and he was deservedly called the "Great." The sovereigns after him were little distinguished till Margaret, who was called "the Semiramis of the North," ascended the throne. She was daughter of Waldemar III., King of Denmark, and wife of Hakon VI., King of Norway. Upon the death of her son in 1387, she

was crowned queen of both kingdoms. The Swedes, dissatisfied with their king Albert, offered her the crown, which she, having defeated Albert, accepted. She then effected the famous *Union of Calmar*, by which the three kingdoms became united under one crown. This wise and heroic princess reigned 26 years over Denmark and Norway, and 16 over Sweden. In 1523, the Union of Calmar was broken, and Sweden regained her independence; but Norway continued to be annexed to Denmark.

In the Revolutionary War with France, Denmark identified herself with the interests of Napoleon; and she was, in consequence, treated with great severity by England. In 1807, her capital was bombarded by a British fleet, and her fleet seized and carried off; and at the peace of 1814, she was obliged to cede the island of Heligoland to Britain in exchange for some West India islands; and Norway to Sweden in exchange for Swedish Pomerania, and the island of Rugen. In the following year Denmark gave Pomerania and Rugen to Prussia in exchange for Lauenburg, and a pecuniary consideration. In 1848, the Duchies of Schleswig and Holstein revolted, and after a short war matters were arranged by the Great Powers on condition that they were to retain their own distinct institutions, and not to be incorporated with Denmark or each other; but in 1866 this arrangement was violated and they became incorporated with Prussia.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The Roman name of Jutland! The inhabitants called! Who were they! When did Denmark come to be known! From this period, and for 200 years after, what was their character! The countries that suffered from their predatory descents! By what names were they called! What is said of them with regard to England! What is said of them with regard to *Normandy*? The date of this event! The leader on the occasion! What is said of their subsequent proceedings! What is said of *Sweyn*? The date

of his invasion of England? What is said of Canute? Margaret called? Whose daughter, and whose wife was she? When, and on what occasion was she crowned Queen of Denmark and Norway? When, and how did she become Queen of Sweden also? The date of the union of Calmar? When, and under whom was it broken up? Was Norway at that period disannexed from Denmark? When, and why was it taken from Denmark and added to Sweden? What is said of England with regard to Denmark in 1807? What of Heligoland, Swedish Pomerania, and Rugen? What of the Duchies of Sleswig and Holstein?

#### HOLLAND.

In the time of the Romans Holland was inhabited chiefly by the *Batavii* and *Frisii*. After the fall of the Roman Empire it was seized by the Goths and other northern hordes, who divided it into several petty states. It was conquered by Charles Martel in the eighth century, and subsequently formed a part of the dominions of Charlemagne. From the tenth to the fourteenth century the Netherlands were divided into many petty sovereignties, under the dukes of Brabant, the counts of Holland and Flanders, &c. In 1383, by marriages, and otherwise, the whole became subject to the dukes of Burgundy; and subsequently to the house of Austria; and thence it passed into the possession of Spain. In 1579, seven of the provinces threw off the yoke of Spain, and formed themselves into the "Republic of Holland, or the Seven United Provinces," under a supreme magistrate, called the *Stadtholder* or Defender of the State. The seven united provinces were Holland, Friesland, Groningen, Overysse, Utrecht, Guelderland, and Zeeland. The other ten provinces remained subject to Spain till transferred to the German branch of the house of Austria in 1700. See the Historical note on Belgium.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

In the time of the Romans Holland was inhabited chiefly by? After the fall of the Roman empire it was seized by? By whom,



and when was it subsequently conquered? Of whose dominions did it afterwards form a part? What is said of Holland from the tenth to the fourteenth century? Under what dukes and counts was it principally? How, and when did it become subject to the dukes of Burgundy? How to Austria, and how subsequently to Spain? When did it throw off the yoke of Spain? Of how many provinces did "the Republic of Holland," then formed, consist? Name them. To what year did the other ten provinces continue subject to Spain, and to what country were they then transferred?

#### BELGIUM.

The original inhabitants were *Celts*; but in the time of the Romans the country was occupied by the *Belga*, a German tribe. After the time of Charlemagne, Belgium, or Flanders, as it was then called, became subject to the counts of Flanders; next to the dukes of Burgundy; and subsequently to the house of Austria. Up to the revolt of the Seven Provinces, its history is much the same as that of Holland. Napoleon annexed it to France in 1795, but it was in 1814 taken from France, and joined with Holland, to form the kingdom of the Netherlands. This kingdom was broken up by the Revolution in 1830 into the present kingdoms of Belgium and Holland; and Leopold, Prince of Saxe-Coburg was elected King of the Belgians.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The original inhabitants? Who occupied the country in the time of the Romans? What is said of the *Belga*? After the time of Charlemagne, Belgium became subject to? Its name then? With what country is its history connected? Up to what date? By whom was it annexed to France? The date? What led to the formation of the kingdom of the *Netherlands*? What to its dissolution? The date of each event? Who was chosen king of the Belgians.

#### PORTUGAL.

The ancient name of Portugal was *Lusitania*, but the boundaries are somewhat different. Connected geographically with Spain, it, in early times, shared the same fate, and was successively subject to the Romans,

the Suevi, the Goths, and the Moors. In the year 1139, the two kingdoms became distinct, when Count Alphonso, of the house of Burgundy, having defeated the Moors in the great battle of Ourique, was proclaimed by his victorious troops king of Portugal. He was therefore the first king of Portugal, and during his dynasty, which continued till 1580, the country rose to the highest point of political and commercial eminence. The early and extensive discoveries of the Portuguese in Africa, India, Brazil, &c., are well known.

In 1580, on the failure of the royal line, Philip II., king of Spain, took possession of the kingdom; but in 1640, a revolution took place, and the crown was conferred on John, Duke of Braganza (John IV.), whose descendants are still in possession of it. The invasion of Portugal by the French in 1807, the consequent emigration of the queen, Maria I., with the whole of the royal family, to Brazil, the expulsion of the French from Portugal by the British, &c., and the replacement of her son on the throne of Portugal, are well known.

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The ancient name of Portugal! Were the boundaries the same! What is said of it with regard to Spain! When was it separated from Spain, and on what occasion! The first king of Portugal! How long did it continue under his dynasty, and what is said of the progress made by the country politically and commercially! When, and on what occasion was it taken possession of by Spain! What is said of the revolution in 1640! What was the consequence of the invasion of the country by the French in 1807! By whom were the French expelled from Portugal! What is the connexion between the Royal Houses of Brazil and Portugal!

#### SWITZERLAND.

The inhabitants of ancient Switzerland were of Celtic origin. They were called *Helvetii* by the Romans; and the country was subsequently called *Helvetia*. The present name of the country is derived from the Canton of *Schweitz*, which was the most distinguished in the re-

volution of 1307. The Helvetii were subjugated by Julius Cæsar in the year 60 B.C.; and they so continued till the dissolution of the Roman empire when the Burgundians and the Germans became masters of the country.

During the middle ages, Switzerland, like most parts of Europe, consisted of a number of small, but independent states, which only nominally acknowledged a superior. From an early period the Counts of Hapsburg, who originally possessed a small territory in the Canton of Berne, began to acquire power and influence in Switzerland; and when Rodolph, the head of the house, was elected Emperor of Germany, in 1273, the greater part of the country owed him allegiance. The encroachments of his son Albert, and the tyranny of Gesler, the Austrian governor, drove the people into rebellion. The mountain Cantons of Schweiz, Uri, and Unterwalden, led on by the celebrated William Tell, were the first to take up arms against the Austrians; and having totally defeated them in the famous battle of Morgarten, they formed a permanent alliance, which was the foundation of the Helvetic Confederation, or the Republic of Switzerland. Lucerne, Zurich, Glarus, Zug, and Berne joined the Confederation between 1332 and 1353; Aargau was taken from Austria in 1415; St. Gall, Thurgau, Friburg, Soleure were admitted between 1451 and 1481; the Grisons in 1497; Basle and Schaffhausen in 1501; and Appenzell in 1513. Shortly after Tessin was taken from the Milanese, and Vaud from Savoy.

In 1798 Switzerland was overrun by the armies of France, to which it was subjected under the name of the Helvetic Republic; but after the fall of Napoleon it regained its independence; and its ancient form of government was re-established under the sanction of the Congress of Vienna. On this occasion, too, the number of its Cantons was increased to 22, by erecting what were formerly subject and allied districts into cantons.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The original inhabitants! They were called by the Romans! The country subsequently called! The present name of the country derived from! Why! By whom, and when were the *Helvetii* subjugated! On the breaking up of the Roman empire who became masters of Helvetia! What observation is made regarding Switzerland, and Europe generally, during the middle ages! What is said of the Counts of Hapsburg! What of Rodolph! What of his son Albert and Geisler! The Cantons which first took up arms against the Austrians! The date! Their leader! In what famous battle were the Austrians totally defeated! The result of this battle! What effect had the French Revolution upon Switzerland! On the fall of Napoleon what was done by the Congress of Vienna with regard to Switzerland!

TURKEY.

The Turks are of Tartar origin. About the year 800, they took possession of a part of Armenia, which was called from that circumstance *Turkomania*. They afterwards extended their conquests over Syria, Asia Minor, Egypt, and Europe. In 1360, they took Adrianople, and in 1453, Constantinople, which put an end to the Roman empire in the East. The conquest of the Crimea and Morea soon followed; and in 1440, they captured Otranto in Italy. Rhodes was taken in 1522 by Soliman the Magnificent, the terror of Europe; and in 1529, Buda. In the same year Vienna was besieged, but it was saved by the advance of Charles V. In 1683 they again attacked Vienna with an army of 200,000, men, but were repulsed with great slaughter by the Poles under Sobieski. See page 174.

QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

The Turks are of what origin! When did they take possession of Armenia! What was it called in consequence! To what countries did they extend their conquests subsequently! When did they take Adrianople! When Constantinople! The consequence of this! What other conquests followed! When did they capture Otranto! When Rhodes! Who was the terror of Europe at that time! When was Buda taken! When was Vienna besieged! How saved! How saved again in 1683! Who was Sobieski!

## GREAT DIVISIONS OF HISTORY.

UNIVERSAL History may be divided into—

1. ANCIENT History, which commences with the creation of the world, and terminates with the destruction of the Roman empire, A.D. 476.

2. The History of the MIDDLE AGES, which extends from the destruction of the Roman empire to the discovery of America, A.D. 1492.

3. MODERN History, which extends from the discovery of America (or from the end of the fifteenth century) to the present time.

ANCIENT History may be subdivided into four periods—The *Antediluvian*; the *Heroic*; the *Historic*, (which begins with the first Olympiad, 776 B.C.) and the *Roman* (from the fall of Carthage, 146 B.C., to that of Rome, A.D. 476).

The History of the MIDDLE AGES may be divided into six periods—

1. The foundation of the modern states of western Europe, A.D. 476–622;<sup>1</sup> when the Saxons invaded Britain, 449; the Franks settled in Gaul, or France, 481; the Ostrogoths in Italy, 489; and the Visigoths in Spain, 507.

2. The Mahometan period, 622–800.

3. The period of Charlemagne, and the Franco-Germanic empire, 800–936.

4. The DARK AGES, 936–1100.

5. The period of the Crusades, 1096–1273.

6. The revival of the Fine Arts in Italy; the taking of Constantinople, 1453, and the diffusion of learning; the discovery of America, 1492; and the passage round the Cape of Good Hope, 1497.

---

<sup>1</sup> See page 163; also page 97.

## GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

WITH ETYMOLOGICAL AND EXPLANATORY NOTES.

IN the pronunciation of foreign GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES there is great diversity, and often great difficulty. In fact, with regard to many of them there is a threefold pronunciation, namely, the foreign, the English, and a pronunciation which is neither foreign nor English, but between the two. In such cases, we should adopt the pronunciation which is most in accordance with custom and authority; but as this cannot always be ascertained, the following general rules will be found useful to the learner :—

1. When foreign names have been *Anglicized* in form or spelling they should be pronounced as English words ;<sup>1</sup> as *Italy, Spain, Brussels, Naples, &c.*

2. When foreign names have been brought by custom or authority under the English pronunciation or accent we should always pronounce them as if they were English words.<sup>1</sup> For example, we should not, in this country at least, give the word *Par*'s its French pronunciation (*Par-ee*), nor the word *Han*'over its native or original accent (*Hanö'ver*). In words like the preceding, the English pronunciation may be considered as fixed, but even in cases in which custom seems divided between the foreign and the English pronunciation the preference should be given to the latter. For example, we would rather give the word *Am*'t-ens its English, than its French pronunciation (*A-mè-ong*'), unless we happened to be in the country in which it is so pronounced.

---

<sup>1</sup> In English words the tendency of the accent is to the root, and not to the termination. Hence, as a general rule, the accent on English words is usually on the first syllable ; but the exceptions are numerous. See "Principles of Pronunciation" in the Introduction to the Author's English Dictionary.

## VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

3. In English, *a* has *four* sounds, as in our words *fate*, *far*, *fat*, and *fall*; but in the other languages of Europe it has, generally speaking, only *two* sounds, namely, that of *a*, as in *far*, and *ā*, as in *fat*. In Oriental languages it is often sounded like *a* in our word *fall*, which has given rise to discrepancies in spelling such as the following:—*Punjab*<sup>1</sup> or *Punjaub*, *Cabul* or *Caubul*.

4. *aa*.—In *Danish* words, *aa* sounds like *aw* in our word *haul*—that is, like short *ɔ*. Thus *Aalborg* is pronounced *ol'borg* or *ol'bor'h*.

5. *æ* or *ā*.—In *German* and *Danish* words, *æ* or *ā* is generally sounded like *a* in our word *fate*. In *Dutch*, it is pronounced like *a* in our word *far*.

6. *e*.—The long sound of *e*, as in the word *me*, does not occur in any foreign language, its general sound being nearly that of our long *a* as in the word *fate*. See Rule 14.

7. *ai* or *ay*.—In *French* words, *ai* has, generally speaking, the sound of *e*, as in our word *there*. In the *German* languages, *ai* or *ay* sounds broader than the English *i* in *kite*, or as we pronounce *ai* in *aisle*.

8. *au* or *eau*.—In *French* words, *au* and *eau* are pronounced like our long *ō*. Thus *Hainault* is pronounced *Hainō*; and *Bordeaux*, *Bordō*. In the *German* languages, *au* approaches the sound of *ou* in our word *our*. Thus, *Breslau* is pronounced *breslou*, and *Austerlitz*, *ousterlitz*.

9. *æu* or *äu*.—In *German* words, *æu* or *äu* has nearly the same sound as the diphthong *oi* in our word *toil*. Compare the *German* sound of *eu*.

10. *é*.—In *French* words, *é* with the acute accent is sounded like our long *a*, as in *fate*; *è* with the grave, and *ê* with the circumflex accent, like *e* in *there*; and *e* not accented, is generally pronounced like our short *e*, as

---

<sup>1</sup> *Punjaub* is derived from the Persian or Sanscrit words *penj* or *punj*, five, and *ab* or *ap*, water or river. The "five rivers" which gave name to the *Punjaub* are the Indus, the Jelum, the Chenab, the Ravee, and the Sutlej. Compare the *ab* in *Doab*, which means between the two rivers (Jumna and Ganges); and see note on *Mesopotamia*, page 126.

in *met*. In *Italian* words, *e* has either an open sound like *ai* in *fair*, or a close sound like the same diphthong in *pain*.

11. In *Italian* words, *e final* is pronounced; but in *French* it is mute, unless marked with the acute accent (*é*).

12. *ei*.—In *French* words, *ei* has the sound of *e*, as in our word *there*. In *German* words, *ei* or *ey* has the sound of our long *i*, as in *fine*.

13. *eu*, *ēu*, *ěu*.—In *German* words, *eu* sounds like *oi* in our word *toil*. Compare the *German* sound of *aeu* or *äu*. For the *eu* or *äu* in *French* words, we have no corresponding sound, but it is something like the sound of *e* in our word *her*, or of *u* in *fur*.

14. *i*.—In *French*, *Italian*, and most foreign words, *i* has the sound of long *e* in *English*, as in the word *me*. But in some *French* and *German* words *i* has a short sound, as in our word *fig*.

15. *ie*.—In most foreign languages, *ie* has the sound of long *e*, as in our word *field*.

16. *o*.—In most foreign languages, *o* has, generally speaking, either a long sound, as in our word *robe*; or a short sound, as in *rob*. In the *Swedish* and *Norwegian* languages, *o* ending a word or syllable is sounded like *oo*.

17. *oe* or *ö*.—In *German* words, *oe* or *ö* has a long sound like the *French*, *eu*; or a short sound like the *French* *eu*.

18. *oi*.—In *French* words, *oi* is sounded like the syllable *wa*, in our word *water*.

19. *ou*.—In *French* and foreign words, *ou*, generally speaking, is sounded like *oo* in *English*.

20. *u*.—In most foreign words, *u*, generally speaking, is sounded as it is in our word *rule*. In *French* words, *u* has a sound intermediate between the sounds of *oo* and *eu* in the same language, for which we have no corresponding sound. The letter *u*, before *a*, *e*, or *i*, when taken in the same syllable, is pronounced like *w*, as in *Guayaquil* (*gwí-a-keel*), *Cuença* (*kwensa*), and *Guardafui* (*Gar-daf-we*). Compare the pronunciation of *u* before *a*, *e*, or *i* in our words, *assuage*, *equal*, *quench*, *question*, *anguish*, &c.

21. *ue* or *u*. In *German*, *Dutch*, and *Danish* words, *ue* or *ü* is sounded like the *French* *u*.

22. *ui* or *uy*. In *Dutch* words *ui* or *uy* sounds like *eu* in *German*, or *oi* in *English* words.



23. *w*.—In *Welch* words, *w* has the sound of *oo* in English. Thus, *Amlwch* is pronounced *Amlook*; *Pwllheli*, *Poolheli*. In such cases *w* represents what its name denotes, double *u* (or, as formerly written, *vv*).

#### CONSONANTS

The sounds of the CONSONANTS in all the Continental languages are, generally speaking, similar to the sounds of the same letters in English words. The following are the principal exceptions:

24. *b*.—In German, *b* at the end of a word or syllable, is pronounced like *p* in English words. In *Spanish*, when between two vowels, it has a sound like that of our *v*.

25. *c*.—In German, *c* before *e*, *i*, or *y* is pronounced like *ts* in English words. In *Italian*, before the same letters, it has the sound of *ch* in our words *cherry* and *chill*. In *Spanish*, in the same position, it is pronounced like *th* in our word *thine*. But in the *Catalan* dialect, *c* is sounded as it is in English words.

26. *cc*.—In *Italian* words, *cc* is pronounced like *c*, but more strongly—that is, when before *e*, *i*, or *y* it is sounded like *tch* in our word *match*.

27. *ch*.—In *Italian* words, *ch* before *e* or *i*, is pronounced like *k* in English words, as in *Civita Vecchia* (*cheeveeta vekia*). In most foreign languages, including words derived from the Hebrew, Greek, and Latin, it is similarly pronounced, that is, like our letter *k*. But in *French* and *Portuguese* words, *ch* has the sound of *sh*, or of *ch* in our word *chaise*. In *German* and *Dutch*, it has a hard, guttural sound resembling that of *h* strongly aspirated, as in the word *alcohol*. The *Scotch* pronunciation of *ch* in *loch*, and the *Irish*, of *gh* in *lough* are similar. Compare also the pronunciation of the Greek *χ*.

28. *cua*, *cue*, *cui*, *cuo*.—In *Spanish* words, these syllables are pronounced *kwā*, *kwey*, *kwee*, *kwo*.

29. *g*, *j*, *x*.—In *French* and *Portuguese* words, *g* before *e*, *i*, or *y*, and *j*, in all positions, are sounded like *zh* in English, or like *z* in the word *azure*. In *Spanish* words, *g* before *e* or *i*, and *j* in all positions, are sounded like *h* strongly aspirated, as in the word *alcohol*. In several

Spanish words *x* has the same sound, that is, the *guttural* sound of *h*; as in the Spanish pronunciation of the word *Don Quixote* (*hee-ho'-tê*). In *German*, and in several other languages, *j* is sounded like *y* in English, as in the word *hallelujah*.

30. GL, GN.—In *Italian* words, *gli* has the liquid sound of *lli*, as in *million*, *veraglio*. In *French* and *Italian* words *gn* is pronounced something like *ni* in our words *onion*, *minion*. In *Spanish* *n* has a similar sound; and so also *nh* in *Portuguese*; thus *Minho* is pronounced *meen'yo*.

31. GH, GIA, GIO, GIU.—In *Italian* words, *gh* has the hard sound of *g*, as in *go*; and *gia*, *gio*, *giu* are pronounced like the syllables *ja*, *jo*, *joo*.

32. SCH.—In *German* words, *sch* is, generally speaking, pronounced like *sh* in English. But in *Dutch* it has the sound of our *sk*—or rather the pure sound of *s* followed by guttural *ch*, as in the Scotch pronunciation of the word *loch*. In *Italian*, *sch* is pronounced *sk*, but *sc* before *e* or *i*, is sounded like *sh* in our word *shall*.

33. V, F, W.—In *German* words, *v* is pronounced like *f*; and *w*, like *v*. But the *w* in final *ow* is always silent.

34. TH.—In most foreign languages the digraph *th* has the sound of *t*, as in our word *Thomas*.

35. S, T, D, X.—In *French* words, the consonants *s*, *t*, *d*, *x*, are not pronounced when ending a word. But *Paris*, *Brest*, *Rheims*, *Arras*, and a few others are pronounced by us as if they were English words.

36. Z or ZZ.—In *Italian* and *German* words, *z* or *zz*, is pronounced like *ts* or *ds* in English.

37. In the names of places in India, and in the East generally, the accent is usually on the last syllable; as in *Hindustan'*, *Afghanistan'*, *Hyderabad'*, *Seringapatam'*, *Serampore'*, *Ispahan'*, *Teheran'*.

38. Names ending in *polis* and *poli* have the accent on the syllable preceding this termination, as in *Gallip'oli*.

39. In some cases, it is impossible to give with the sounds of our letters the true foreign pronunciation. In such cases, the pronunciations given should be considered merely as approximations.

40. When the learner is in doubt about the pronunciation of a foreign word, the best way is to pronounce it, as if it were English. See note, page 187.

## 192 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Aa,<sup>1</sup>  
 Aach,<sup>2</sup> ak.  
 Aachen,<sup>3</sup> ak'en.  
 Aalborg,<sup>4</sup> ol'borg.  
 Aargau,<sup>5</sup> ar'gow.  
 Aarhuus, or'-hooce, 20.\*  
 Abergavenny<sup>6</sup> (-gain'-y).  
 Aberystwith (-ist'-with).  
 Abomey, ab-o-may'.  
 Aboukir, ab-ou-keer', 14.  
 Abrantes, ab-ran'-tes.  
 Abruzzo, a-broot'-so, 36.  
 Acapulco (-pool'-ko), 20.

Achia, a-ai' a, 27.  
 Achil,<sup>7</sup> ak'-il.  
 Acre, ak' er, or a'-ker, 3.  
 Aden, ad'-en, or a'-den, 3.  
 Adige, ad'-e-je, 11.  
 Adour, ad-oor', 19.  
 Adrianople<sup>8</sup> (-o'-pl).  
 Ægean, e-jee'-an.  
 Ægina, e-jī'-na.  
 Af-ghan-is-tan',<sup>9</sup>  
 Aghadoc, ah-a-doo'-e.  
 Agua,<sup>10</sup> ag-wa (water).  
 Agulhas,<sup>11</sup> a-gool'-yas.

<sup>1</sup> *Aa*.—This is the name of six small rivers, and of numerous streams in different countries in Europe. See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>2</sup> *Aach*.—A small town of Baden on a river of the same name, which flows into Lake Constance. See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>3</sup> *Aachen* is the German name of *Aix-la-Chapelle*. The meaning of the word is *water*, and it is, obviously, akin to the Latin *aqua*, *water*. It occurs in the names of several places, and in various forms. The Italian is *acqua*, the Spanish *agua*, the Portuguese *agua*, and the Old French *aique*. Other forms of the same word are *ac*, *ach*, *auch*, *agh*, *aa*, *a*, *ea*, *eam* (EAU), *ey*, *oe* or *ö*, &c. These forms are frequent both in Celtic and Teutonic languages. See *Aa*.

<sup>4</sup> *Aalborg* means *eel town*. It is situated on the Lymfjord, which means *mud* or *muddy ford*.

<sup>5</sup> *Aargau* means the district of the *Aar*. See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>6</sup> *Aber* is a Celtic word which means the mouth or opening of a river into a sea, lake, or other river. It forms a part of the names of several places, as *Aberdeen* (the mouth of the *Dee*); *Abergavenny* (of the *Gawenny*, at its confluence with the *Ush*); *Aberystwith* (of the *Ystwith* or *Istwith*); *Lochaber*, *Humber*, &c. See *Inverness*.

<sup>7</sup> *Achil* means *eagle island*. The root is the Latin *aquila*.

<sup>8</sup> *Adrianople* means the *city* of *Adrian*. From the Greek *pólis*, a *city*. Compare *Constantinople*, &c.

<sup>9</sup> The termination *stan* is from a Persian word which means *country* or *land*. Hence *Afghanistan*, the land of the *Afghans*; *Beloochistan*, of the *Beloochees*; *Turkestan* of the *Turks*; *Hindustan*, of the *Hindoos*, &c.

<sup>10</sup> *Agua*.—This word occurs in the names of several places, as *Agua Calientes* (ag'-was ka-le-en'-tes); *Agua Fria* (ag'-wa free'-a), &c. The former means *hot water* or *spring*, and the latter, *cold*.

<sup>11</sup> *Agulhas* in Portuguese means *needles*. It is the most southerly point in Africa. Compare our term, "The Needles" (Isle of Wight).

The large figures after the words refer to the preceding rules.

Ah-med-a-bad',<sup>1</sup> 37.

Aisne, ain.

Aix, aiks.<sup>2</sup>

Aixe, aiks,

Aix-la-Chapelle (-sha-pell').

Ajaccio, a-yat'-cho.

Al-a-bam'-a.

Aland,<sup>3</sup> ä'l'-and.

Albans (St.), awl'-banz.

Albany,<sup>4</sup> awl'-ban-y.

Albemarle, ä'l-be-marl'.

Albuera, ä'l-boo-air'-a.

Albufera (-fay'-ra).

Albuquerque (-kair'-ke).

Alcester, awl'-ster, or aws' ter.

Alderney, awl'-der-ny.

Alemtejo,<sup>5</sup> ä'l-em-tay'-zho.

Alençon, a-len'-son, 2.

A-lep'-po.

A-leu'-tian (-shě-an).

Algarve, ä'l-gar'-ve.

Algerine, ä'l-ger-een'.

Algexira,<sup>6</sup> ä'l-jez-ee'-reh.

Algiers, ä'l-jeerr'.

Algoa, ä'l-go'-a.

Alkmaar, alk-mar'.

Al-la-ha-bad'.<sup>7</sup>

Alleghany (-gay'-ny).

Al'-lō-a.

Almeida, ä'l-may'-e-da.

Almeria, ä'l-may'-ree-a.

Alnwick,<sup>8</sup> an'-nik.

Alsace, ä'l-sass'.

Altai, ä'l-ti', or ält'-a-e.

Altona, ä'l-to-na.

Amalfi, a-mäl'-fee, 14.

Ameland, am'-e-lant.

Amherst, am'-erst.

Amiens, am'-e-ens, 2.

Amlwch, am'-look, 23.

Amour, a-moor, 20.

Amritsir, am-ret-seer'.

Am'-ster-dam.<sup>9</sup>

Anahuac, an-a-wack'.

<sup>1</sup> *Abad* is a Persian or Sanscrit word which means *abode* or dwelling. It forms part of the names of several towns, and the accent should always be placed on the last syllable (*abad'*).

<sup>2</sup> *Aix* is a plural form of the Old French *aigue*, water; whence *Aigues-Mortes* (alg-mort'), &c. See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>3</sup> *Aland* is from *a* or *ea*, water, and *land*. See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>4</sup> *Albany*.—Under the Dutch this town was called *Fort Orange*; and New York, *New Amsterdam*. When captured by the English in 1664 the whole tract of country in which they are situated was given by Charles II. to his brother, the Duke of York and Albany (afterwards James II.), and their names were, at the same time, changed.

<sup>5</sup> *Alemtejo* means *beyond*, or south of the *Tejo* or *Tagus*.

<sup>6</sup> *Algexira* is the Arabic name of Mesopotamia. It is from *al*, the, and *jesirah*, an island. *Algiers* is another form of the same word. The island on which it was originally built is now connected with the mainland by a mole. See note on *Mesopotamia*, page 126.

<sup>7</sup> *Allahabad*, from *Allah*, the Arabic name for the Supreme Being, and *abad*, abode. See note on *Abad*.

<sup>8</sup> *Alnwick*, that is, the town (*wick*) on the *Alne*. See *Warwick*.

<sup>9</sup> *Amsterdam*, that is, the dam or embankment of the *Amstel*. Compare *Rotterdam* (at the confluence of the *Rotte* with the *Maese* or *Meuse*), *Schiedam* (of the *Schelde*), &c.

# 194 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

An-co'-na. <sup>1</sup>	Antioch, an'-te-ok, 27.
An-da-lu'-si-a <sup>2</sup> (-loo'-see-a).	An-tip'-a-ros.
Andes, <sup>3</sup> an'-diz.	A-os'-ta.
An-dor'-ra.	Ap'-en-nines.
An'-dō-ver. <sup>4</sup>	Apure, a-poo'-ray.
Angers, an'-jerz, 2.	Aquila, ak'-kwe-la.
Anglesea, <sup>5</sup> or	Aquino, a-kwe'-no.
Anglesey, ang'-gl-se.	Araguay, ar-a-gwī, 20.
An-go'-la.	Aranjuez, a-ran-hweth', 29.
An-go'-ra.	Archangel, ark-ain'-jel.
Angoulême, awn-goo-laim'.	Ar-chi-pel'-a-go, (ar-ke-.)
An-guil'-la <sup>6</sup> ( <i>gu</i> , as in <i>guilt</i> ).	Ard, (high.) <sup>8</sup>
Angus, ang'-gus.	Ardennes, <sup>9</sup> ar-den'.
Anjou, an'-joo.	Arequipa, ar-e-kee'-pa.
An-nap'-o-lis, 38.	Arezzo, a-rets'-so, 36.
Annecy, an'-see, 2.	Argyle, <sup>10</sup> or
Anspach, ans'-pak, 27.	Ar-gyll', ( <i>g</i> , as in <i>guile</i> ).
An-tāl'-o.	Ariège, a-re-aizhe'.
Antibes, <sup>7</sup> an-teeb'.	Ar-kan'-sas.
An-ti-cos'-ti.	Arles, arlz.
Antigua, an-tee'-ga.	Ar-magh, <sup>11</sup> ar-mah'.
Antilles, an-teellz', or an-till'es, 2	Arnheim, arn'-hime, 12.

<sup>1</sup> *Ancona* is derived from the Greek word *ankōn*, an elbow or bend; in allusion to its position in an *angle* of the coast.

<sup>2</sup> *Andalusia*.—Formerly called *Vandalusia*, or the country of the *Vandals*. See page 169.

<sup>3</sup> *Andes*, from a Peruvian word which means *copper* or *metal*.

<sup>4</sup> *Andover*, that is, *over*, or on the other side of the *Ande*, a small river in Hampshire. The Anglo-Saxon name was *Anedafaran*, which means the same.

<sup>5</sup> *Anglesea*, from *ea* or *ey* an island, and *Angles*, the English. When Wales was conquered by Edward I. the English took possession of it, and this name was then given to it. Its ancient name was *Mona*. See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>6</sup> *Anguilla* means *snake* island. The root is the Latin *anguis*.

<sup>7</sup> *Antibes*.—Its ancient name was *Antipolis*.

<sup>8</sup> *Ard* is a Celtic word which means high or mountainous. It forms part of the names of hundreds of places in Europe, particularly in Ireland and Scotland.

*Ardennes*.—This forest owes its name to the *high hills* and deep *valleys* which it comprises. See *Ard* and *Denbigh*.

<sup>10</sup> *Argyle* means the country, or rather the *mountains* of the *Gael*. See note on *Ard*.

<sup>11</sup> *Armagh* is a contraction of *Ardmagh*. See *Ard*.

# GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY. 195

Arpino, ar-pee'-no, 14.

Ar ran.<sup>1</sup>

Artois, ar-twa', 18.

Ar'-un-del.<sup>2</sup>

As-phal-ti'-tes.

As-sam.<sup>3</sup>

Asturias, as-too'-re-as, 20.

Athenry,<sup>4</sup> ath-en-ri'.

Ath'ens.

Athy, ath-ī.

Aube, obe.

Aubigny, o-been'-yee, 30.

Auch, ōsh.

Aude, ode.

Augsburgh, owks'-boorg, 8.

Aurillac, o-reel'-yac.

Au-run-ga-bad,<sup>5</sup> 37.

Austria,<sup>6</sup> aws'-tre-a.

Autun,<sup>6</sup> ō-tun'.

Auvergne, o-vairn'.

Auxerre, o-zair'.

Avignon, a-veen-yong'.

Avon, or av'on.<sup>7</sup>

Axmouth,<sup>8</sup> ax'-muth.

Aylesbury,<sup>9</sup> aйлz'-ber-ry.

Azores,<sup>10</sup> az'-ōrs, or az-ō'-rez.

Bab'el-man'deb.<sup>11</sup>

Bacchilione, bak-el-yo'-nē.

Badajos, bad-a-hos' 29.

Bad'en.<sup>12</sup>

Bagnara, ban-yar'-a.

Bagnères, ban-yare.

Bagnols, ban-yōle.

Ba-ha'-mas.

<sup>1</sup> *Arran*.—This term, which is from *ard*, high, properly means a *mountainous* island. *Arranmore* means *great*, and *Arranbeg*, *little Arran*.

<sup>2</sup> *Arundel* means the *del* or *dale* of the *Arun*.

<sup>3</sup> *Athenry*, from the Irish or Celtic *ath*, a ford, and *na-righ*, of the kings. Compare *Athboy*, *Athleague*, *Athlone*, *Athy*, &c.

<sup>4</sup> *Aurungabad*, that is, the *abode* or residence of *Aurungsebe*.

<sup>5</sup> *Austria* is from *Oesterreich*, which means the *Eastern Kingdom*. It was so called with reference to France, &c., under Charlemagne. See page 171.

<sup>6</sup> *Autun*.—This was the *Augustodunum* of the Romans.

<sup>7</sup> *Avon*, see note <sup>3</sup> page 76.

<sup>8</sup> *Axmouth*, that is, the *mouth* of the *Aax*, which properly means *water* or a *river*. See note <sup>4</sup>, page 76.

<sup>9</sup> *Aylesbury* is from the Anglo-Saxon *Æglesburg*, which means *eagles' mount*; the *g* having been softened into *y*, as in *DAY* from *daeg*, *MAY* from *wagan*, *ANY* from *ænig*, &c.

<sup>10</sup> *Azores*.—These islands owe their name to the Portuguese word *açores*, *hawks*, great numbers of which were observed in them when they were first discovered.

<sup>11</sup> *Babel-mandeb* means "the gate of tears"—in allusion to the dangerous navigation of the Straits.

<sup>12</sup> *Baden*, commonly called *Baden-Baden*, is derived from the German *bad*, a bath, the plural of which is *baden*. Our word *BATH* is another form of *bad*, the *d* having been aspirated, as in *PATH* from *pad*, *BURTHEN* from *burden*, &c.

# 196 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Bahia,<sup>1</sup> ba-hee'-a, 14.  
 Bahr,<sup>2</sup> bar.  
 Baikai, bā'kal.  
 Baja,<sup>3</sup> bah'-ya.  
 Bal,<sup>4</sup> bāl.  
 Bāl-e-ar'-ic.<sup>5</sup>  
 Balize, ba-leez'.  
 Balkan, bāl-kan'.  
 Ballina,<sup>6</sup> ba-li-na'.  
 Bāl-lin-a-sloe (-slo').  
 Bāl-ly-me'-na.<sup>7</sup>  
 Baltimore, bawl'-te-more.  
 Baltinglass, bawlt-in-glass'.  
 Banagher, ban'-ā-her.  
 Ban'-bridge.<sup>8</sup>  
 Barbadoes', bar-bay'-dus.  
 Barbuda, bar-boo'-da, 20.  
 Bar-ce-lo'-na.  
 Bard'-sey.<sup>9</sup>  
 Bareilly, bar-ay'-lē.

Barraux, bar-ro'.  
 Barreges, bar-raizh'.  
 Basle, or Bâle, bāl.  
 Basques, bask.  
 Bas'-sō-ra, or Bas'-ra.  
 Bastia, bas-tee'-a.  
 Batavia, bā-tay'-ve-a.  
 Baton Rouge (roozh).  
 Battaglia, bat-tāl'-ya.  
 Bautzen, bout'-tsen. 8  
 Bayeux, bah-yu'.  
 Bayonne, bah'-yone.  
 Beaumaris,<sup>10</sup> bo-may'-ris.  
 Beaune, bone.  
 Beauvais, bo-vay'.  
 Bed'-ford.<sup>11</sup>  
 Bedouin, bed'-oo-in.  
 Behring, bee'-ring.  
 Beira, bay'e-ra.  
 Beirut. See Beyroot.

<sup>1</sup> *Bahia*, in Spanish and Portuguese, means *bay* or harbour. It here means the *bay* by way of eminence.

<sup>2</sup> *Bahr* or *Bakar* means, in Arabic, water, river, or sea. Hence Bahr-el-Abiad means the *White* river, and Bahr-el Azrek the *Blue* river, which uniting at Senaar, form the Nile. Hence, also, Bahr-el-Lot, the Sea of Lot (the Dead Sea).

<sup>3</sup> *Baja*, the *Baias* or Brighton of the Romans; it is also the name of a town in Moldavia.

<sup>4</sup> *Bal*, *Ball*, *Bally*, are different forms of the Irish or Celtic *baille*, a townland, a town, a village. This term forms part of the names of about two thousand places in Ireland.

<sup>5</sup> *Balearia*, from the Greek *balleō*, to cast, to throw, to *sling*. These islands were so called in allusion to the skill of the inhabitants in the use of the sling.

<sup>6</sup> *Ballina*, formerly *Ballinagh*, is from the Irish or Celtic *bel-an-ska*, the mouth of the ford. See *Athenry*.

<sup>7</sup> *Ballymena*, that is, the town on the *Mena* or Maine. See *Bal*.

<sup>8</sup> *Banbridge*, that is, the bridge over the *Bann*. This river owes its name to the Irish or Celtic *baan* or *bawn*, white, having been so called in contradistinction to the *Blackwater*.

<sup>9</sup> *Bardsey*, that is, the island (*ey*) of *bards*. Compare Anglesey, &c.

<sup>10</sup> *Beaumaris*, in the Island of Anglesey, means *fine marsh*.

<sup>11</sup> *Bedford*, formerly *Bedlesanford*, from the Anglo-Saxon *bedlesan*, to fortify. See *Harford*, under Harwich, page 204.

# GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY. 197

Bel-fast'.<sup>1</sup>  
 Beloochistan (-chis-tan').  
 Belvedere, bel-ve-deer'.  
 Benares, ben-ar'-ez.  
 Ben-coo'-len.  
 Benguela, ben-gay'-la.  
 Benin, ben-een'.  
 Benown, ben-own'.  
 Bentheim, bent'-hime, 12.  
 Ben Macdhui, ben-muk-doo'.  
 Ber-be'-ra, or ber'-be-ra.  
 Berbice, ber-beece, 14.  
 Beresina, or Berezina (-zeen'-).  
 Ber'-lin, or ber-leen', 2.  
 Bermudas, ber-moo'-daz, 20.  
 Berwick, ber'-rick.  
 Bessançon, bay-zang-sōng', 2.  
 Beveland, bay'-ve-lant.  
 Beyroot, bi-root', or bay'-root'.  
 Bid-as-so'-a.  
 Bight, bite.  
 Bilbao, bil-bah'-o.  
 Bil-e-dūl'-ge-rid.  
 Blenheim, blen'-im, 12.

Blois, blwa, 18.  
 Böh-mer Wald,<sup>6</sup> 17.  
 Bois-le-Duc, bwa-le-dook.  
 Bojador, bo-ya-dor', 29.  
 Bok-har'-a.  
 Bolivar, bo-lee-var'.  
 Bolivia,<sup>7</sup> bo-lee'-ve-a, 14.  
 Bologna, bo-lōne'-yah.  
 Bom-bay'.<sup>8</sup>  
 Bonifacio, (bo-ne-fah'-cho).  
 Boötes, bo-o'-tes.  
 Bordeaux, bor-do'.  
 Borgne, born.  
 Bornou, bor-noo', 19.  
 Borodino, bor-o-dee'-no, 14.  
 Bos'-porus.<sup>9</sup>  
 Bouches-du-Rhone (boosh-).  
 Bouillon, boo-eel-yong.  
 Boulogne, boo-lōnye, 39.  
 Bourbon, boor-bōng.  
 Bourbonnois, boor-bon-nay'.  
 Bourges, boorz.  
 Brahmapootra (-poo'-tra).  
 Brazil,<sup>10</sup> bra-zeel'.

<sup>1</sup> *Belfast* is from the Irish or Celtic *bel*, the mouth of the ford, or the entrance of a river; as in *Belmullet*, *Belturbet*, *Belleek*, &c. For the remaining part of the word see the Author's "Dictionary of Derivations," page 284.

<sup>2</sup> *Ben Macdhui* means the mountain of the black bear.

<sup>3</sup> *Berwick*. See "Dictionary of Derivations," page 281.

<sup>4</sup> *Beveland*, that is, the land of beees or oxen.

<sup>5</sup> *Bight* is a contraction of *bayed*; as *might* of *mayed*, *frayed*, *right* of *heft*, &c.

<sup>6</sup> *Böhmmer Wald*, that is, the *Bohemian* wood (*wald*) or forest.

<sup>7</sup> *Bolivia* was so called in honor of General *Bolívar*.

<sup>8</sup> *Bombay*, from the Portuguese *bom*, good, and *baía*, a bay. The root of *bom* is the Latin *bonus*.

<sup>9</sup> *Bos'porus*—generally written *Bosphorous*, but less correctly—is from the Greek words *bous*, an ox, and *poros*, a passage or ferry.

<sup>10</sup> *Brasil*.—The country owes its name to a red kind of wood, which grows in abundance there. It is called *brasil* wood, and is used for dyeing. The word *brasil* is derived from the Portuguese *brasa*, a live or red coal.



## 198 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Breda, bray-dah'.	Cannes, kann.
Brescia, bresh'-e-a, or bresh'-a, 25.	Can-o'-pus.
Breslau, bres'-lou, or bres'-law.	Can'-terbury (-berry).
Bretagne, bre-tang'.	Can-ton'.
Briel, breel.	Cape Breton (brit'-un).
Broek, brook.	Cape Haitien (hay'-te-en).
Brough, bruf.	Ca-rac'-cas.
Bruges, bru'-jiz.	Car-do'-na.
Bruhl, brool.	Car-ib-be'-an.
Bucharest, boo-kar-est'.	Carlsruhe, <sup>4</sup> carls-roo'-hay.
Buck'-ing-ham. <sup>1</sup>	Carmagnola, kar-man-yo'-la, 30.
Buda, boo'-däh, 20.	Car'-o-lī'-na. <sup>5</sup>
Buenos Ayres, <sup>2</sup> bo'nus-ay'-riz.	Carthagena, kar-ta-jee'-na.
Bug, boog, 20.	Casale, ka-säl'e, 11.
Bury St. Edmonds, (berry).	Castiglione (-teel-yo'-na) 30.
Bushire, boo-sheer'.	Castile, cas-teel'.
Cabul, ka-bool'.	Castillon, kas-teel-yōng'.
Caen, kawng.	Castlereagh, <sup>6</sup> kas-sel-ray'.
Cagliari, kal'-ya-re.	Cawn-pōre'.
Cairo, kī'-rō.	Cayenne, kl-en'.
Ca-la-bar'.	Cayman, ki-man'.
Calais, cal'-lis or kal-lay', 2.	Cerigo, <sup>7</sup> cher'-e-go, or cher-e'-go.
Cäl'-cut'-ta.	Cervia, cher'-ve-a.
Callao (-lah'-o, or -yah'-o), 2.	Ceuta, su'-ta, or the'-oo-ta, 25.
Calne, kan.	Cevennes, say-ven'.
Calvados, kal-vah'-dos.	Ceylon, sai-lon'.
Camboge, kam-bōje.	Chagre, shah'-gur.
Cam-bray', or Cam'-bray.	Chalons, sha-long'.
Cambridge, kaim'-brij.	Chambery, sham-bai-ree'.
Campagna, <sup>3</sup> kam-pan'-ya.	Chamouni, shah'-moo-nee.
Cam-peach'-y.	Champagne, sham-pain'.
Can-da-har'.	Champlain, sham-plain'.

<sup>1</sup> *Buckingham* is from the Anglo-Saxon *boe*, a beech tree, *ing*, a meadow, and *ham*, a home or dwelling.

<sup>2</sup> *Buenos Ayres*, that is, *good air*, a name given to it by the Spaniards on account of the supposed salubrity of the place. *Buenos* is from the Latin *bonus*.

<sup>3</sup> *Campagna* is from the Latin *campus*, a plain.

<sup>4</sup> *Carlsruhe* means Charles's rest.

<sup>5</sup> *Caroline* was so called in honour of Charles (*Carolus*) II.

<sup>6</sup> *Castlereagh* means royal or king's castle. See *Athenry*.

<sup>7</sup> *Cerigo*, the ancient *Cythæra*, which was sacred to Venus.

Charente, sha-ront'.	Chiquitos, che-kee'-tōce.
Charenton, sha-ron-tōng'.	Chiswick, chiz'-ik.
Charleroi, shari-rwa'.	Chit-ta-gong', 37.
Chartres, shartz.	Chiusa, ke-oo'-sa.
Chateau, shah-to'.	Chiva, chee'-va, 27.
Chateaubriant (-bree-ang').	Chumleigh, chum'-ly.
Chateaudun, shah-tō-dun'.	Chuquisaca choo-ke-sak'-a.
Chatellerault, shah-tel-rō', 8.	Chusan, choo'-san.
Chatham, chat'-am.	Cinque, <sup>2</sup> sink.
Chaumont, sho-mōng'.	Cirencester, (-sis'-e-ter).
Chelmsford, <sup>1</sup> chemz'-furd.	Ciudad, <sup>3</sup> hoo-dat', 25.
Chelsea, chel'-see.	Ciudad <sup>3</sup> Real.
Cheltenham, chelt'-nam.	Ciudad <sup>3</sup> Rodrigo.
Chemnitz, kem'-nitz, 27.	Civita Vecchia, 27.
Cher, shair.	Clogher, cloh'-her, 27.
Cherbourg, sher'-bürg, 2.	Coblentz, <sup>4</sup> cob'-lents, 2.
Cherokee, cher-o-kee'.	Cochin, ko'-chin.
Cherson, ker'-son.	Cognac, cōne-yāck.
Chertsey, shert'-sey, or ches'-sy.	Coimbra (-im'-bra, or -eem'-bra).
Cheviot, chev'-i-ot.	Coire, kwar.
Chispa, che-ap'-a, 27.	Cōl'-ches-ter. <sup>5</sup>
Chiavari, ki-a-var'-e.	Cologne, cō-lōanya, 39.
Chi-a-ven'-na, (kee-).	Col'-on-sa, <sup>6</sup> or Col-on'-say.
Chicago, she-kaw'-go.	Comines, ko-meen', 14.
Chihuahua, che-wa'-wa.	Com-o'-ro.
Chili, chee'-lee or chil'-le.	Compiègne, com-pee-ain', 30.
Chimborazo, cheem-bo-rah'-zō, 27.	Condé, kon'-day, 10.
Chinchilla, chin-cheel'-ya, 27.	Connaught, con'-nawt.

<sup>1</sup> *Chelmsford*, that is, the *ford* over the *Chelmer*.

<sup>2</sup> *Cinque Ports*.—They were originally, as the term (*cinque*) denotes *five* in number, namely Dover, Hastings, Romney, Hythe, and Sandwich. Winchelsea, Seaford, and Rye were subsequently added. Their first charter was granted in 1077 by William the Conqueror.

<sup>3</sup> *Ciudad* means *city*, and hence *Ciudad Real* means *Royal city* or *Kingstown*, and *Ciudad Rodrigo*, the city of *Roderick*. The root is the Latin *civitas*.

<sup>4</sup> *Coblentz*, a corruption of the Latin *Confluentes*, which was so called from its position (at the *confluence* of the Rhine and Moselle).

<sup>5</sup> *Colchester* derives its name from the *Colns* in Essex, which, as there are several rivers of this name in England, seems to be from the Latin *colonia*, a colony. The first colony planted in Britain was at Colchester. See the note on *Chester*, page 72.

<sup>6</sup> *Colones* means the island (*ey*) of St. *Colin* or *Columba*.

## 200 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Copenhagen, <sup>1</sup> ko-pen-haig'-en.	Cyclades, <sup>4</sup> sik'-lă-dez.
Coquet, cok'-et.	Cyprus, <sup>5</sup> si'-prus.
Coquimbo, ko-keem'-bo.	Czernowitz, cher'-no-vits.
Cordilleras, <sup>2</sup> (cor-dil-yay'-ras).	Dag-hes-tan'.
Cor'-do-va.	Dahl, dāl.
Co-re'-a.	Dah'-o-mey, or da-ho-may'.
Corfu, kor-foo', or kor'-fu.	Dalhousie, dāl-hoo'-zee.
Cor-ri-en'-tea. <sup>3</sup>	Dalkeith, dāl-keeth'.
Co-run'-na.	Dam-i-et'-ta.
Cosne, kōne.	Dantzic, <sup>6</sup> dant'-sic.
Costa Rica, kos'-ta re'-ka.	Dar-da-nelles' (-elz').
Cote d'Or, kōte dōre.	Darfour, dar-foor', 19.
Co-to-par'-i.	Da'-ri-en.
Courland, koor'-land.	Dartmouth, dart'muth.
Cowes, kowz.	Dauphine', do'-fee-nay, 14.
Cracow, kray'-ko.	Dec'an, or dec-can'.
Crecy, kressy.	De-la-go'-a Bay.
Cremnitz, krem'-nits.	Delhi, del'-lă.
Cre-mo'-na.	Dem-e-ra'-ra.
Crim-e'-a.	Dem-be'-a.
Cuenca, kwen'-sa, 27.	Denbigh, <sup>7</sup> den'-by.
Cul-lo'-den.	Den'-de-rah.
Cupar, koo'-par.	Den-der-mōnd'.
Curagoa, coo-ra-so'.	Den'mark. <sup>8</sup>
Curische-Haff, koo'rish-eh-hăff.	Deptford, <sup>9</sup> det'furd.

<sup>1</sup> *Copenhagen* means the *merchant's haven* or harbour. Compare our words *Chippingham*, *Chepstow*, *Cheapside*, *cheap*, &c.; which are from the Anglo-Saxon *ceapian*, to buy, to traffic.

<sup>2</sup> *Cordilleras*, in Spanish, means a *cord*, girdle, or chain.

<sup>3</sup> *Corrientes* means *currents*, from the Latin *currere*, to run.

<sup>4</sup> *Cyclades*.—These islands were so called because they lie in a circle (*kuklos*) round Delos, which the Greeks, on account of its famous oracle, regarded as the most important.

<sup>5</sup> *Cyprus* was, and still is noted for its *copper* mines, and from it the Latin word *cuprum* (copper) is derived.

<sup>6</sup> *Dantzia*.—This town was originally built by a Danish colony, and hence its name, *Danes' vik* or *vig*, that is, town. See *Warwick*.

<sup>7</sup> *Denbigh*.—From *bye*, a dwelling; and *denu*, a deep valley.

<sup>8</sup> *Denmark*, that is, the boundary (*march*) or country of the *Danes*. Compare *Finnmark* (of the *Fins*).

<sup>9</sup> *Deptford*, that is, the *deep ford* (at the confluence of the small river, Ravensworth, with the Thames).

# GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY. 201

Der'by,<sup>1</sup> or dar'by.  
 Des-a-gua-de-ro (-gwä-).  
 Dessau, des'-sou, 8.  
 Detroit, de-traw', or de-trwa'.  
 Det'-ting-en.  
 Deux Ponts, deu-pong'.  
 De-ven'-ter.  
 De-vi'-zes.  
 Di-ar-be'-kir.  
 Diemen's Land (dee'mens-).  
 Dieppe, dee-ep'.  
 Digne, deen, 29.  
 Dijon, dee-zhong'.  
 Dinant, dee-nang'.  
 Dnieper,<sup>2</sup> nee'-per.  
 Dniester,<sup>2</sup> nees'-ter.  
 Döf-rë-i'-eld'.  
 Don'-go-la, or Don-go'-la.  
 Dordogne, dor-dön'.  
 Dordrecht, dor'-drekt.  
 Douay, doo'-ay.  
 Douglas, düg'-las.  
 Doura, doo'-ra.  
 Drave, dräv, or drave.  
 Drenthe, dreut or dren'-të.  
 Dreux, droo.  
 Drogheda, draw'e-da.  
 Droitwich, droit'-ich.

Drontheim, dron'time.  
 Dub'lin.<sup>3</sup>  
 Dulwich, dü'l'-ich.  
 Dumfries, dum-frees'.  
 Dunwich, dun'-ich.  
 Duquesne, doo-kain'.  
 Durazzo, door-at'-zo, 36.  
 Dum-bar'-ton.<sup>4</sup>  
 Dun'-cans-by.<sup>5</sup>  
 Dunfermline (-fer'-lin).  
 Dun-gen-ess'.<sup>6</sup>  
 Dur'ham.<sup>7</sup>  
 Dwi'-na, or dween-a.  
 Ecuador, ek-wah-dore.  
 Ed'-in-burgh (-bür-ro).  
 Eh-ren-breit'-stein, 12.  
 Eichstadt (ik'-stat).  
 Eisenach, i'-zen-ak.  
 Elbeuf, el-büf'.  
 El-e-phan-ti'-na (-teë-).  
 El'-gin (g hard).  
 Elmina, el-mee'-na.  
 El-si-nore', or El-si-neur'.  
 Ely,<sup>8</sup> ee'-li.  
 Em'brun, or am-brün'.  
 Em'-mer-ich (-ik), 26.  
 Enghien, äng-e'-än.  
 En-nis-kil'-len.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Derby* is either a contraction of *Derwentaby*, that is, the abode (bye) on the Derwent, or the abode of the deer or wild animals; for this was the original meaning of the word *deer* (from the Greek *thër*, as *door* from *thura*, &c.)

<sup>2</sup> *Dnieper* and *Dniester*. See note <sup>4</sup>, page 76.

<sup>3</sup> *Dublin*, from the Celtic *dubh*, black, and *lin*, a pool.

<sup>4</sup> *Dumbarton* meant the fort or residence (*dun*) of the Britons, as *Dunkeld* meant that of the Celts or Caledonians.

<sup>5</sup> *Duncunby*, that is, the dwelling (bye) of Duncan.

<sup>6</sup> *Dungeness* is probably a corruption of *Dangerness*; meaning the dangerous promontory. See *Inverness*.

<sup>7</sup> *Durham* from *deer* and *ham*, the home or abode of deer or wild animals. It was also called *Dunkholm*, and the bishop signs himself *Dunelm*. See *Holm*.

<sup>8</sup> *Ely*, that is, *el* island (ea). See note on *Auchen*.

<sup>9</sup> *Enniskillen*, from the Irish *en*is or *en*ach, the root of which is the

## 202 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Ep-er-nay'.  
 Erie, e'-rē.  
 Er-i-van'.  
 Erzerum, erz'-room.  
 Erz-gebirge,<sup>1</sup> erts-gay-birg'eh.  
 Esquimaux, es-ke-mo', 8.  
 Es-se-qui'-bo (-kee-).  
 Es'sex.<sup>2</sup>  
 Ess'-ling-en.  
 Es-tre-ma-du'-ra (-door-a).  
 Etamp, ai-tamp'.  
 Eupen, oi'-pen, 13.  
 Eu-phra'-tes.  
 Eutin, oi-ten, 13.  
 Evesham, eves- or ee'-sham.  
 Ev'-o-ra.  
 Evreux, ev-roo'.  
 Ex'-e-ter.<sup>3</sup>  
 Eyder, i'-der.  
 Eylau, i'-lou, 2, 8.

Fahlun, fah'-loon.  
 Falkland, fauk'-land.  
 Falmouth, fal'-muth.  
 Farnham,<sup>4</sup> farn'-am.  
 Faro,<sup>5</sup> fah'ro.  
 Farøe,<sup>6</sup> far'o, or far'-o-e.  
 Fauquier, faw-keer'.  
 Fay-äl'.  
 Fayoum, fi-o-om'.  
 Fermanagh, fer-man'-a.  
 Fer-röl'.  
 Figueras, fe-gay'-ras.  
 Finisterre,<sup>7</sup> fin-is-ter'.  
 Flam'borough<sup>8</sup> (-bur-ro).  
 Foix, fwa.  
 Fontainebleau<sup>9</sup> (-blo').  
 Fon-te-noy', 2.  
 Fontevault, fon-tev-ro'.  
 Foul'ness.<sup>10</sup>  
 Franconia,<sup>11</sup> fran-ko'-ne-a.

Latin *insula*, an island. Hence *Innismore* the *great* island; *Innisbeg*, the *little* island; *Innisowen*, the island of *Owen*; *Enniskillen*, *Enniscorthy*, &c.

<sup>1</sup> *Ers-gebirge* is from the German *ers*, metal, and *gebirge*, a chain of mountains. These mountains are famous for their mineral wealth. The *Hers* mountains also owe their name to *ers*, metal. *Riesen-gebirge* means the *giant* mountains, and *Fichten-gebirge* the *pine* mountains.

<sup>2</sup> *Essex*. See note on *Middlesex*, page 73.

<sup>3</sup> *Exeter*. See note 4, page 72.

<sup>4</sup> *Farnham*, from the Anglo-Saxon *fearn*, fern, and *ham*, a home.

<sup>5</sup> *Faro*.—This term means a *lighthouse*; but it originally meant the island of *Pharos* near Alexandria, on which there was a celebrated *lighthouse*.

<sup>6</sup> *Farøe*, that is, *sheep island*, from the Norse *faar*, sheep, and *öe*, an island. See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>7</sup> *Finisterre*, from the Latin *finis*, an end, and *terra*, the earth or land. Compare our term, "The Land's End."

<sup>8</sup> *Flamborough*. See note on this word, page 74.

<sup>9</sup> *Fontainebleau*, from *fontaine*, *bel*, and *eau*, that is, the fountain of beautiful waters.

<sup>10</sup> *Foulness*, a promontory in *Essex*, which was so called from the great number of sea *fowls* which frequent it.

<sup>11</sup> *Franconia*, that is, the land of the *Franks*. See page 167.

Frascati, fras-kah'-te.  
 Frau'-en-burg (frou-), 2, 8.  
 Fraustadt, frou'-stat.  
 Freiberg, fri'-berg, 12.  
 Freyburg, fri'-boorg, 12.  
 Frio<sup>1</sup> (Cape), free'-o.  
 Frische-Haff,<sup>2</sup> freesh'-eh-häf.  
 Friule, free-oo'-le.  
 Frontignac, fron'-teen-yak.  
 Fulham,<sup>3</sup> fool'am.  
 Funchal, foon'-shäl.  
 Furth, furt, 34.  
 Gaeta, ga-e'-ta.  
 Ga-la-pa'-gos.  
 Ga-lat'z.  
 Ga-le'-na.  
 Gal-lip'-ö-li, 38.  
 Gäl'-ves-ton.  
 Galway, gawl'-way.  
 Garfagnana (-fan-ya'-na), 30.  
 Ga-ronne (-ron').  
 Geffle (*g* hard).  
 Gel'-ders (*g* hard).  
 Geneva, jen-ee'-va.  
 Genoa, jen'-ö-a.  
 Grey'-sers (*g* hard).  
 Ghauts, gawts.  
 Ghent, ghent or gong,  
 Gher-gon (*g* hard).

Ghi-lan (*g* hard).  
 Gibraltar,<sup>4</sup> je-brawl'-ter.  
 Gi-jon', hee-hone, 29.  
 Gilolo, je-lo'-lo.  
 Girgenti, jeer-jen'-ta.  
 Giurgevo, joor-jay'-vo.  
 Glasgow, glas'-go.  
 Glogau, glo'-gou.  
 Gloucester, glos'-ter.  
 Go-dav'-e-ry.  
 Goes, hoos, 2, 29.  
 Gotha, go'-ta, 34.  
 Got'-ting-en.  
 Gozzo, got'so, 36.  
 Gram-mont'.  
 Gram'-pound.<sup>5</sup>  
 Gra-na'-da, 3.  
 Graudenz, grou'dents, 8.  
 Gravelines, grav-leen'.  
 Green'-wich (-idge or -itch).  
 Gren-a'-da.  
 Gren-o'-ble.  
 Grisons, gree-zöng'.  
 Gron'-ing-en.  
 Gross-war'-dein (-dine).  
 Groote Eyland.<sup>6</sup>  
 Gruyeres, groo-yäre.  
 Guadaloupe, gad-a-loop'.  
 Guadiana,<sup>7</sup> gwa-de-an'-a.

<sup>1</sup> *Frio Cape*, that is cool cape. See *Agua*, page 192.

<sup>2</sup> *Frische-Haff* properly means *Freshwater haven* or harbour.

<sup>3</sup> *Fulham* originally meant a *foul* or dirty *home* or habitation; from the Anglo-Saxon *ful* and *ham*.

<sup>4</sup> *Gibraltar* is a corruption of the Arabic *Gebel-el-Tarik*, that is, the mountain of Tarik. Tarik, or Tarif, was a Moorish leader, who landed there in 711, and built a fortress on the rock. The Arabs call Mount Sinai, to this day, *Gebel-el-Mousa*, that is, the Mountain of Moses.

<sup>5</sup> *Grampound*, on the Fale, near Falmouth, owes its name to its fine bridge (*grand pont*) over the river.

<sup>6</sup> *Groote Eyland*, in the Gulf of Carpentaria, means *great island*.

<sup>7</sup> *Guadiana*, from the Arabic *quady* or *wady*, a river, and *Anas* or *Ana*, its ancient name.

## 204 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Gua-dal-quiv'-er, <sup>1</sup> 20.	Hel'voetalsuys, (-vet-alois), 22.
Guanaxuato, gwan-a'-hwa-to, 29.	He-rat' or he'-rat.
Guardafui, gar-da-fweé.	Herauld, hay-ro'.
Guatemala, gwa-tee-mah'-la.	Her-cu-la'-ne-um.
Guayaquil, gwi-a-keel', 20.	Hesse-Cas'-sel, (hess-).
Guernsey, gern'-zy (g hard).	Hesse Darmstadt (hess-).
Gui-an'-a (g hard).	Heytsbury, hait's-ber-ry.
Gui-en'-ne (g hard).	Hil'-des-heim (-hime), 12.
Guipuscoa, ghe-poo's-co-a.	Him-a-lay'a <sup>5</sup> or Him-má-leh.
Gu-ze-rat' (goo-), 20.	His-pan-i-o'-la.
Haerlem, har'-lem.	Hochheim, hok'-hime, 27.
Hague, haig.	Hol'-land. <sup>6</sup>
Hainsault, hay'-no.	Holm, <sup>7</sup> hölm.
Halle, <sup>2</sup> hal'-le.	Holstein', hol-stine, 12.
Ham'-o-aze.	Honduras, hon-doo'-ras.
Harwich, <sup>3</sup> har'-ich.	Horsham, <sup>8</sup> hors'am.
Ha-van'-nah.	Hue', hoo-ay'.
Haverfordwest (har'-fúrd-).	Hu-ron', or Hu'-ron.
Havre-de-grace <sup>4</sup> (-deh-grass).	Huelva, wel'-va or hwel'-va.
Heb'-ri-des.	Icolmkill, <sup>9</sup> ik-om-kill'.
Hech'-ling-en (hek-), 27.	Illinois (-noi' or nois').
Hei'-del-berg (hi-), 12.	In-dian-ap'-8-lis, 38.
He-le'-na.	Indre, ang'-dr.
Hel'-i-gö-land.	Innsbruck, <sup>10</sup> inns'brook.

<sup>1</sup> *Guadalquivir*, the ancient *Boetis*. The Arabs gave it this name, which means *the great river*, for so it must have appeared to them. In the arid plains of Arabia there are no rivers deserving the name, nor in Northern Africa, from which they passed into Spain.

<sup>2</sup> *Halle* owes its name to its salt works.

<sup>3</sup> *Harwich* is from the Anglo-Saxon *here*, an army, and *wick*, a town. Hence also *Hereford*, that is, the *ford* of the *army* (over the Wye).

<sup>4</sup> *Havre* is another form of *harbour*. See *Aber*, page 192.

<sup>5</sup> *Himalaya*, in the Sanscrit or ancient language of India, means *snowy*. Compare Mount *Hæmus*, *Sierra Nevada*, Mount *Blanc*, and *Dhawalagira* (the *White Mountain*).

<sup>6</sup> *Holland*, that is, *hollow* or low land. Compare *Netherlands*.

<sup>7</sup> *Holm* in Anglo-Saxon means a river island; also flat, low land lying along a river, and occasionally flooded by its waters.

<sup>8</sup> *Horsham*, the *ham* or *home* of *Horsa*, the Saxon. Hence also *Horsstead*, the (*stede*) place where he was buried.

<sup>9</sup> *Icolmkill*, that is, the island (*ey*) of the cell (*Kill*) or church of St. *Colin* or *Columbus*.

<sup>10</sup> *Innsbruck*, that is, the *bruck* or bridge over the river *Enn*.

In-ver-a'-ry.  
 In-ver-ness.<sup>1</sup>  
 I-o'-na.  
 Ips'wich<sup>2</sup> or ip'-sij.  
 Irak'-Ar'ābi.<sup>3</sup>  
 Irkutak, ir-kootak'.  
 Iroquois, ir-o-kwa'.  
 Ir-ra-wad'-dy.  
 Ischia, is'-ki-a, 27.  
 Iser, e'-zer.  
 Is-lam-a-bad'.  
 Islay, I-lay.  
 Is'-ling-ton.  
 Jaen, ha-en, 29.  
 Ja-mai'-ca.  
 Janeiro, ja-nay'-ro.  
 Janina, yah'-ne-na, 29.  
 Japura, ha-poo'-ra, 29.  
 Jassy, yas'-sy, 29.  
 Jav'-a or Ja'-va.  
 Jedburgh, jed'-burro.  
 Je'na or yay'na, 29.  
 Jersey.<sup>4</sup>

Jorullo, ho-rool'-yo, 29.  
 Juggernaut (-naut), 34.  
 Jungfrau, yoong'-frou, 8.  
 Kamts-chat'-ka.  
 Ka'-trine or Kat'-rin.  
 Kerguelen's, kerg'-lens.  
 Keswick, kes'-ik.  
 Khiva, kee'-va.  
 Ki-an-ku' (-koo).  
 Kil-ken'ny.<sup>5</sup>  
 Kil-lal'-a.  
 Kil-la-loe (-loo').  
 Kin-naid'.<sup>6</sup>  
 Kircudbright,<sup>7</sup> kir-koo'bre.  
 Kön'igsberg.<sup>8</sup>  
 Kor-do-fan'.  
 Kurdistan, koor-dis-tan'.  
 Laaland,<sup>9</sup> law'land.  
 Lab-ra-dor'.  
 La-dó-ga.  
 Ladrões,<sup>10</sup> la-drónz, 2.  
 Lago Maggiore, ma-jo'-rey.  
 Laguna, la-goo'-na.

<sup>1</sup> *Inverness*, from the Irish *inbher* or *inver*, another form of *Aber*, and *ness*, a promontory.

<sup>2</sup> *Ipswich*, a corruption of *Gippingwich* that is, the town (*wich*) on the *Gipping* (a tributary of the *Orwell*.)

<sup>3</sup> *Irak-Arabi*, that is, the Irak of the Arabs; Irak Ajēmi means the Irak of the Persians.

<sup>4</sup> *Jersey* is a corruption of the Latin *Cæsarea*, that is, the island of *Cæsar*.

<sup>5</sup> *Kilkenny*, the church (*Kill*) of St. *Kenny* or *Canice*. From the Celtic *cill*, a cell, a cloister, a church, a church-yard or burying-place. The root is evidently the Latin *cella*. *Kill* is also the Anglicised form of *caille*, a wood. Hence in the names of some places it means wood, and not *church*.

<sup>6</sup> *Kinnaird*, that is, the head of the heights. From the Celtic *cean* or *ken*, the head, and *ard*, high. Hence *Cantyre*, the head of the land; *Kenmare*, the great head; *Nordkyn*, the north cape or head, &c.

<sup>7</sup> *Kircudbright* means the church (*kirk*) of St. *Cuthbert*.

<sup>8</sup> *Königsberg*, the old capital of Prussia, means *Kingstown*.

<sup>9</sup> *Laaland* means low island or land.

<sup>10</sup> *Ladrões*, that is, *thieves*—a name given to the natives of these islands by the Spaniards. Its root is the Latin *latro*, a robber.



## 206 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Lambeth.<sup>1</sup>  
 Lan-ark' or Lan'-ark.  
 Lan'-caster.<sup>2</sup>  
 Langres, lan'gr.  
 Lan-gue-doc' (-gay-).  
 La Plata,<sup>3</sup> plah'ta.  
 Larache, la-raah'.  
 Lat-a-ki'-a (-kee-).  
 Laenburg, lou'-en-boorg.  
 Launceston, lanston.  
 Lausanne, lo-zann'.  
 Lau'-ter-brunn (lou-), 8.  
 Laybach, lay'-bac, 26.  
 Leam'-ing-ton (lem-).  
 Lecce, let'-cha.  
 Leghorn, leg'-orn.  
 Legnano, len-ya'-no, 29.  
 Leicester,<sup>4</sup> les'-ter.  
 Leighlin, lek'-lin.  
 Leighton, lee'-ton.  
 Lei'-ning-en (li), 12.  
 Leinster, lin'-ster.  
 Leipsic, lipe-sik.  
 Leitrim, lee'-trim.  
 Leixlip, less'-lip.  
 Le Mans, le-mang'.  
 Leominster, lem'-ster.  
 Le-pan'-to.  
 Le Puy, lee pwee.

Ler'-wick, ler'-ik.  
 Leuchtenburg (loik'-), 2, 13.  
 Leutschau, loit'-show, 13.  
 Le-vant'.<sup>5</sup>  
 Leeuwarden (loi'-var-), 22.  
 Leyden, li'dn, 12.  
 Lichtenau, lik-te-nou', 8.  
 Lich'-ten-stein (-stine), 26.  
 Liege, lee-aije.  
 Lima, lee'-ma, 14.  
 Limoges, le-mōzh'.  
 Limousin, lee-moo-säng'.  
 Limoux, lee-moo'.  
 Lincoln,<sup>6</sup> link'-on.  
 Ling'-en.  
 Lin-lith'-gow (-go).  
 Lintz, lints, 34.  
 Lisle, leel.  
 Lip'-pe-Detmold.  
 Lisieux, lee-zee-oo'.  
 Li-vo'-ni-a.  
 Lla-nel'-ly.  
 Llanos,<sup>7</sup> lan'os.  
 Llanrwst, lan-roost', 23.  
 Lo-an'go.  
 Loch-ab'-er (lok-), 27.  
 Lodi, lo'-dee.  
 Loff-o'-den.  
 Loire, lwar.

<sup>1</sup> *Lambeth*, from the Anglo-Saxon *lam*, loam or mud, and *mith*, a little port or haven.

<sup>2</sup> *Lancaster*, from *Lune* and *castra*. See note on Chester, p. 72.

<sup>3</sup> *La Plata* means *silver*, which is also the meaning of the term *Argentine* (Republic.)

<sup>4</sup> *Leicester*, from *Leir* (now the Soar) and *castra*. See Chester, p. 72.

<sup>5</sup> *Levant*.—This term (from the Latin *levans*), originally meant *rising*; and hence it came to be applied to the *eastern* regions, because the sun *rises* in that quarter of the heavens. It now means the *eastern* part of the Mediterranean. Compare the terms *ORIENTAL* (from *oriens*, rising), and *Natolia* (properly *Anatolia*), which is from two Greek words which mean the *rising up*, that is, of the sun.

<sup>6</sup> *Lincoln* means the *colony* on the hill (*dun*) near the pool (*lin*). Its Roman name was *Lindum Colonia*. See note on *Colchester*.

<sup>7</sup> *Llanos* is the Spanish form of the Latin *planus*, and it means *plain*.

Loo-choo, or Loo Koo.	Maid'stone. <sup>7</sup>
L'Orient, lo'ri-awng.	Ma-jor'ca. <sup>8</sup>
Loughborough, lūf'-bur-o.	Mal-a-bar'.
Lou-i-si-an'-a <sup>1</sup> (loo-).	Ma-lac'-ca.
Louvain, loo-vain'.	Mal'-a-ga.
Louviers, loo'-ve-ey.	Malay, mah-lay'.
Lu-cay'-a, or lu-ki'-a.	Malines, maleen'.
Lucca, lūk'-ka, or look'-ka.	Malmö, mal'mō.
Lucena, loo-thai'-na, 25.	Malmsbury, mamz'-ber-ry.
Lucera, loo-che'-ra.	Malplaquet (-plak'-ey).
Lu-gan'-o.	Malstrom, mal'-stroom.
Lu-sa'-ti-a.	Malta, mawl'ta.
Lutzen, loot'-sen.	Malton, mawl'ton.
Lyons, ly'-ons, or lee-ong, 2.	Malvern, maw'vern or maw'vern.
Lym'-fi-ōrd. <sup>2</sup>	Manaar, ma-nar'.
Lyonnois, lee-on-nay'.	Manche, mansh.
Macao, mah-cow' (or -kah'-o).	Man-choo'-ri-a.
Mac-cas'-sar.	Man-hat'-tan.
Mac-quar'-rie (-kwor-).	Manheim, man'-hime, 12.
Ma-dei-ra <sup>3</sup> (-day'-).	Ma-nil'-la.
Ma-dras'.	Man'-tu-a.
Ma-drid'.	Ma-ra-cay'-bo (-ki-bo).
Maestricht, <sup>4</sup> mēs'-trikt.	Mar-an-ham'.
Mag-da-le'-na, (or -lay'-na).	Mar-en'-go.
Mag'-de-burg.	Mar-ga-ri'-ta (-ree-ta).
Ma-gel'-lan, or Mag-el-lan'.	Margate. <sup>9</sup>
Mag-e-rōe <sup>5</sup> (-ro', or -o-eh).	Mariegalante (-ee-ga-lant').
Maggiore, <sup>6</sup> mah-jo'-rey.	Marino, ma-ree'-no.
Magny, man'-ye.	Marquesas, mar-kay'sas.
Mahon, ma-hōne or ma-hon'.	Mar-sal'-a.
Mah-rat'-ta.	Marseilles, mar-sail'.

<sup>1</sup> *Louisiana* was so called in honor of *Louis XIV.*

<sup>2</sup> *Lymfjord.* See note on *Aalborg*, page 192.

<sup>3</sup> *Madeira* is derived from the Portuguese word *madera*, wood or timber. These islands, when first seen by the Portuguese, were covered with trees. The river *Madeira* is derived from the same word. The root is the Latin *materia*.

<sup>4</sup> *Maestricht*, that is, the passage (*trajectum*) of the *Maese* or *Meuse*.

<sup>5</sup> *Magerôe* means the *meagre* or bare island.

<sup>6</sup> *Maggiore*, that is, *major* or greater.

<sup>7</sup> *Maidstone*, that is, the town on the *Medway*.

<sup>8</sup> *Majorca*, that is, *major* or greater, as compared with *Minorca*, which means *minor* or lesser.

<sup>9</sup> *Margate*, from *mar*, the sea, and *gate*, a way or outlet.

## 208 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Mar-ta-ban'.  
 Martinico, mar-ti-nee'-co.  
 Martinique, mar-te-neek'.  
 Mar'-y-bo-rough (ro).  
 Ma'-ry-land.<sup>1</sup>  
 Mas-sa-chu'-setts (-tahoo-).  
 Mas-a-fue-ro (-fway'-ro).  
 Ma-ta-mo'-ras.  
 Mat-a-pan'.  
 Mayence, ma-yans'.  
 Me-a'-co, 3.  
 Meaux, mo.  
 Mechlin, mek'-lin.  
 Medina, me-dee'-na.  
 Meerut'.  
 Mei'-ning-en (mI-).  
 Meissen, mI'-sen, 12.  
 Menin, meh-nang'.  
 Mequinez, mek'-e-nez.  
 Mergui, merg-ee'.  
 Mer'-sey.<sup>2</sup>  
 Mes-o-po-ta'-mI-a.<sup>3</sup>  
 Messina, mes-see'-na.  
 Metz, mets, or mays.  
 Michigan, mish'-Y-gan.  
 Mid'dle-sex.<sup>4</sup>  
 Mil'-an.  
 Min-da-na'-o, 3.  
 Mir-a-mi-chi' (-shee).  
 Missouri, mis-soo'-re.  
 Mobile, mo-beel'.  
 Mocha, mo'-ka.  
 Mod'-è-na.  
 Mon'-a-co.

Mont Blanc, mong-blawng'.  
 Mon-te'-go Bay.  
 Montreal, mon-tre-awk'.  
 Montpelier, mong-pel-yay'.  
 Mont-ser-rat'.  
 Morecambe Bay (-cam).  
 Mores, mo-ray'a.  
 Mor-garten.  
 Mor-oc'-co.  
 Mourzouk, moor-zook'.  
 Mozambique (-zam-beek').  
 Munich, mu'nik.  
 Naas, nais.  
 Namur, na-moor'.  
 Nan-kin', or nan-keen'.  
 Nantes, nants or nangt.  
 Nap'-ò-li di Romania.  
 Nas'-sau (-saw or -sou).  
 Natal,<sup>5</sup> nātāl'.  
 Naumburg, noum'-boorg.  
 Na-va-ri'-no (-ree'-no).  
 Navarre, na-var'.  
 Naze<sup>6</sup> or Ness.  
 Neagh, nay or ne'a.  
 Neilgherry, neel-gher'-ry.  
 Nemours, ne-moor'.  
 Nenagh, ne'-nah.  
 Ner-bud'-dah.  
 Neuburg, noi'boorg, 13.  
 Neufchatel, noo-shat-tel'.  
 Neustadt, noi'-stat.  
 Ne-vad'-a.  
 Nevers, nevair'.  
 New Gre-nad'-a.

<sup>1</sup> *Maryland*.—Lord Baltimore, the founder of this colony, gave it this name in honor of Henrietta *Maria*, queen of Charles I.; and to his title (*Baltimore*) the capital of the State owes its name.

<sup>2</sup> *Mersey* means *sea-island*.—See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>3</sup> *Mesopotamia*.—See note on this word, page 126.

<sup>4</sup> *Middlesex*.—See note on this word, page 78.

<sup>5</sup> *Natal*.—This coast was so called by Vasco de Gama because it was discovered by him on Christmas day (the day of the *Nativity*).

<sup>6</sup> *Naze* is derived from the Latin *nasus*, the nose.

Ni-ag'-a-ra.  
 Nicaragua, nik-ar-ah'-gwa.  
 Nice, nees.  
 Nic-o-bar'.  
 Ni-cop'-o-li.  
 Ni-co'-sia.  
 Nic-o-te'-ra.  
 Nieman, nee'-man.  
 Nievre, nee-ai-vr.  
 Niger, ni'jer.  
 Nijni, nizh'ne.  
 Nik-o-lai'-ev.  
 Nim'-e-guen (*g* hard).  
 Nismes, neem or neemz.  
 Nivelles, nee-vel'.  
 Nocera, no-chay'ra.  
 Nordhausen, nort-how'zen.  
 Nordkyn,<sup>1</sup> nord'-kin.  
 Norfolk,<sup>2</sup> nor'-foke.  
 Norwich, nor'-rij.  
 No-var'a.  
 Nov-go-rod'.  
 Ny-ko'-ping.  
 Oahu, wá-hoo.  
 O-ce-an'-i-ca.  
 Odensee, o'-den-seh.  
 Oeland,<sup>3</sup> eü'-land, or o'-land.  
 Oesel, eü-sel, or o'-sel.  
 O'fen.<sup>4</sup>  
 Of-fen-bach (-bak).  
 O-hi'-o.  
 Oise, waz.  
 Ok-hotak'.  
 Ol'-den-burg (-boorg).

Oleron, o-ler-ong  
 Omagh, o'-mah.  
 Omer, St., sawngt o'-mair  
 Onate, on-yat'-tay, 30.  
 O-ne'-ga.  
 Oneglia, o-nail'-ya.  
 Oneida, o-nfda.  
 On-ta'-ri-o.  
 Oojeim, oo-jaim'.  
 Orellana, o'-rel-yan-a.  
 Orihuela, o-re-way'la.  
 Or-i-no'-co.  
 Or'-lâans, or or-leang'.  
 Orthez, or-tay.  
 Oruro, o-roo'ro.  
 Os-tend'.  
 Os'-ti-aks.  
 Ossuna, os-soo'na.  
 Os-wé-go.  
 Otaheite. See *Tahiti*.  
 Ottajano, ot-ta-yan'o.  
 Ot'-ta-wa.  
 Ouachita, wosh-e-tah'.  
 Ouche, oosh.  
 Oudenard, ood'-nard.  
 Ouisconsin, wis-con'-sin.  
 Oural, oo'ral. See *Ural*.  
 Ouse,<sup>5</sup> ooz.  
 Overysseel, ô-ver-î'-sel.  
 Oviedo, o-ve-ay'do.  
 O-why'-hee. See *Hawaii*.  
 Pal-my'-ra.<sup>6</sup>  
 Pam-pe-lu'na (-loo-na).  
 Panama, pan-a-mah'.

<sup>1</sup> *Nordkyn* means north cape or head. Compare *Kenmare*, the great head; and *Cantyre*, the head of the land. From the Celtic *cean* or *ken*, the head.

<sup>2</sup> *Norfolk*. See note on this word, page 73; and compare the derivations of *Norwich* (the north town), and *Sudbury* (the south town).

<sup>3</sup> *Oeland*, or *Oland*, means water land or island. See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>4</sup> *Ofen* is another name for Buda. It is so called in allusion to its hot springs. Our word *oven* is from the same root.

<sup>5</sup> *Ouse*. See the note on this word, page 76.

<sup>6</sup> *Palmyra*, that is, the place or city of palms.

## 210 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Papua, pap'-oo-a.  
 Paraguay (-gway or -gwí).  
 Pa-ra-ma'-ri-bo.  
 Par-a-mat'-ta.  
 Parana, par-a-nah'.  
 Par-me-san'.  
 Pascuaro, pas-kwar'-o.  
 Passaic, pas-say'ic.  
 Pas-sa-ma-quod'-dy.  
 Passau, pas'sou.  
 Pa-ta-go'-ni-a.  
 Pavia, pa-vee'-a.  
 Pays de Vaud, pay'-e-de-vó.  
 Pegu, pe-goo'.  
 Pe-kin', or pe'-kin.  
 Pem broke.<sup>1</sup>  
 Penn-syl'-va-nia.  
 Pen-sa-co'-la.  
 Perigord, per-e-gor'.  
 Perigeux, per-e-goo'.  
 Per-nam-bu'-co (-boo-ko).  
 Perpignan, per-peen'-yang.  
 Peru, per-oó'.  
 Perugia, pe-roo'ja.  
 Pesaro, pay'sa-ro.  
 Peschiera, pes-ke-ay'ra, 27.  
 Pesh-k'-wur.  
 Pesth, pest, 34.  
 Petchora, petch'-o-ra.  
 Piacenza, pee-a-chent'sa.  
 Pi-chin'-cha.  
 Pictou, pic-too'.  
 Piedmont,<sup>2</sup> peed'-mont.  
 Pienza, pe-ent'-sa.  
 Pignerol, pin-ya-rol'.

Pillau, pil'lou.  
 Piombino, pe-om-bee'no.  
 Pisa, pee'-sa.  
 Pistoja, pis-to'-ya.  
 Plateau,<sup>3</sup> plah-tó.  
 Poitiers, poi-teers'.  
 Poitou, pwa-too'.  
 Pon-di-cher-ry (-sher'ry).  
 Pontefract, pom'-fret.  
 Poo'-nah.  
 Po-pa-yan'.  
 Pop-o-cat'-a-petl.  
 Port-au-Prince, port-o-prangse.  
 Portici (-te-che).  
 Port Mahon'. See *Mahon*.  
 Porto Rico (ree'-co).  
 Port'u-gál.<sup>4</sup>  
 Potenza, po-tent'-sa.  
 Po-to'-mac.  
 Po-to'-si.  
 Pough-Keepsie, po-kep'sa.  
 Pozzuola, pot-su-o'la.  
 Prague,<sup>5</sup> praig.  
 Presteign, pres'teen.  
 Pres'ton.<sup>6</sup>  
 Pruth, proot.  
 Pskov, or Pakof, skóf.  
 Puebla, pway'bla or poo-ay'bla.  
 Puerto, puer'to or poo-er'to.  
 Pulo-Penang' (poo-lo).  
 Punjaub,<sup>7</sup> pun'-jáb.  
 Puy-de-Dome, pwee-deh-dóme.  
 Pwllheli, pool-hel'le.  
 Quebec, kway-bek'.  
 Querataro, kay-ray'ta-ro.

<sup>1</sup> *Pembroke* means the hill (*pen*) over the brook. From the Celtic *ben* or *bann*, a hill or mountain.

<sup>2</sup> *Piedmont*, that is, the country at the foot (*pied*) of the mountains.

<sup>3</sup> *Plateau*.—The root is the Greek *platús*, broad, wide. Hence also *plat*, as in *platform*, *plate*, *platter*, &c.

<sup>4</sup> *Portugal*, that is, the Port of *Calle*, now *Gaya*. See note, page 101.

<sup>5</sup> *Prague*, that is, the *brig* or bridge (over the Moldau.)

<sup>6</sup> *Preston* is a corruption of *Priest's town*.

<sup>7</sup> *Punjaub*.—See note on this word, page 188.

Quesnoy, ken-wa.	Rochefoucault (-foo'-co).
Quiberon, kee-brong.	Rochelle, ro-shel'.
Quilca, kee'-lo-a.	Romagna, ro-man'-ya.
Quillota, keel-yo'ta.	Rouen, roo-awng'.
Quimper, kam-pair'.	Rousillon, rou-seel'-yong.
Quito, kee'to.	Rovigno, ro-veen'-yo.
Ragusa, ra-goo'-sa.	Rugby. <sup>4</sup>
Raleigh, <sup>1</sup> raw'lee.	Ru'-gen ( <i>g</i> hard).
Rambouillet (-boo'-il-yay).	Rustschuck, roost'-shook.
Raphoe, ra-fo'.	Rutherglen, ru'glen or rug'len.
Ra-ven'-na.	Rut'land. <sup>5</sup>
Reading, red'-ding.	Saade, sad.
Regen, raig'-en.	Sabina, sa-bee'na.
Regensburg, raig'-ens-boorg.	Sack-a-too'.
Reggio, red'-jo.	Saghalien (-lee'en).
Reichenbach, rī'ken-bāk.	Sah'-ra, or sa-hay'ra.
Reichenberg, rī'ken-berg.	Said, side.
Reichstadt, rīk'statt.	Salisbury, solz-berry.
Reigate, rī'gate.	Salonika (-nee'ka).
Rennes, ren.	Sal-va-dor'.
Requena, ray'kain-ya.	Santa Cruz, san'ta kroos.
Reus, ray'ooce (Spain).	Santa-Fe' (-fay).
Reus, rois (Germany).	Santa-Fe de Bo-go-ta'.
Reikiavik, <sup>2</sup> rī'ke-a-vik.	San-ti-a'-go, <sup>6</sup> 3.
Rheims, reemz or ramz.	Santillana, san-til-yan'-a.
Rideau, ree-do'.	Saône, sōne.
Riesen-gebirge <sup>3</sup> (-gay-birg'ē).	Sar-a-gos'-sa.
Rio, ree'-o.	Sar-a-to'-ga.
Rio del Nor'-tē.	Sarawak, sar-aw'-wak
Rio Col-o-ra'-do, 3.	Sarthe, sart.
Rio Grande, ree-o-gran'dē.	Sas'-sa-ri (-ree).
Rio Janeiro (-nay-ro).	Saumur, so-moor'.
Rivoli, ree'vo-le.	Sa-van'-nah. <sup>7</sup>
Rocheport, rōsh'-fore.	Save, or sāv.

<sup>1</sup> *Raleigh* was so called in honor of Sir Walter *Raleigh*.

<sup>2</sup> *Reikiavik* in Iceland, means the *reek town*, in allusion to the hot springs near it.

<sup>3</sup> *Riesen-Gebirge*.—See note on *Ers-gebirge*, page 202.

<sup>4</sup> *Rugby*, formerly *Rocheby*, meant the dwelling (*bye*) on or near the rock (*rocks*.)

<sup>5</sup> *Rutland*.—See note on this word, page 72.

<sup>6</sup> *Santiago* owes its name to St. *Jago* (or St. *James*) the patron saint of Spain.

<sup>7</sup> *Savannah*, from the Spanish word *savana*, a sheet.

## 212 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Savigny, sa-vin'-ye.  
 Scafell,<sup>1</sup> skaw'-fell.  
 Schaffhausen,<sup>2</sup> shaf-how'-zen.  
 Schaumburg, shōwm-boorg.  
 Schaumburg-Lippe (-lip'peh).  
 Scheldt, skelt or sheld.  
 Schelling, skel'-ling.  
 Schemnitz, shem'-nits.  
 Sche-nec'-ta-dy (ske).  
 Schie, skee.  
 Schiedam, skee'-dam.  
 Schonbrunn, shon'-broon.  
 Schumla, shoom'-la.  
 Schleswig. See *Sleswig*.  
 Schuyler, ski'-ler.  
 Schuylkill, skool'-kill.  
 Schwarzwald, shwartz'valt.  
 Schweidnitz, shwit'-nits.  
 Schweitz, shwits.  
 Schwerin, shwer'-in.  
 Scio, shee'-o.  
 Scutari, skoo-tār'-ee.  
 Se-bas'-to-pol.  
 Segni, sen'-yee.  
 Seine, sane or sen.  
 Sen-e-gam'bia.<sup>3</sup>  
 Ser-in-ga-pa-tam'.  
 Sereth, se-ret'.  
 Setuhal, se-too'-bāl.  
 Sev'-ille, or se-vil'.  
 Sevres, saiv'r.  
 Seychelles, say-shell'.

Shauenburg, shon'-en-boorg.  
 Shep'-pey.<sup>4</sup>  
 Shrewsbury, shrooz'-berry.  
 Si'am, or se-am'.  
 Si-er'-ra Le-o'-ne.<sup>5</sup>  
 Si-er'-ra Mo-re'-na (-ray').  
 Si-er'-ra Ne-vad'-a.  
 Sig'-ma-ring-en.  
 Sim-pher-o'-pol.  
 Simplon, sāng-plōng'.  
 Sin-ó-pe.  
 Sioux, se-oó.  
 Sleswig,<sup>6</sup> sles'-vig'.  
 So-co'-tra, or soc-o-tra.  
 So-fa'-la.  
 Soignies, swan'-yay.  
 Soissons, swas'-song'.  
 Son-der-hau-sen (hou-sen).  
 So-ra'-ta, 3.  
 Southwark, suth'-ark.  
 Spandan, span-dou', 8.  
 Spor-ā'-des.  
 Spo-le'-to (-lay-).  
 Squillace, skwil-lah'-chay.  
 St. Cloud, sawng-cloo.  
 St. Croix (cro-aw').  
 St. Cyr, sang'-seer.  
 St. Felipe (-leep').  
 St. He-lé-na.  
 St. Ja'go, or ya'-go, 3.  
 St. Roque (rōke).  
 Stamboul,<sup>7</sup> stam-bool'.

<sup>1</sup> *Scafell*, from *shaw* and *fell*, both Norse words. Compare the *Shaw* (in Denmark), *Dovre-feld*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> *Schaffhausen* is from *schif*, a ship, and *haus*, a house or haven.

<sup>3</sup> *Senegambia*. See note on *Mesopotamia*, page 126.

<sup>4</sup> *Sheppey*, that is, *sheep island*. See note on *Aachen*.

<sup>5</sup> *Sierra*. This term has been applied by the Spanish and Portuguese to mountains whose summits or peaks resemble the teeth of a saw, the Latin of which is *sierra*. *Sierra Leone* means *Lions' hill*.

<sup>6</sup> *Sleswig*, that is, the town (*vick*) on the *Schley* (fiord.)

<sup>7</sup> *Stamboul*, the Turkish name of Constantinople, is a corruption of the Greek *es tan polin*, that is, *to the city*.

Sta-vang'-er.  
 Stone-henge.<sup>1</sup>  
 Stranraer, stran'-rar'.  
 Stromöe,<sup>2</sup> strom'-ö.  
 Sudbury,<sup>3</sup> süd'-ber-ry.  
 Suez, soo'-ez.  
 Su-ma'-tra, 3.  
 Su-rat'.  
 Sur-i-nam'.  
 Sus-que-han'-nah.  
 Sus'-sex.<sup>4</sup>  
 Sy-e'-ne.  
 Suth'-er-land.<sup>5</sup>  
 Tagliamen'to (tal-ya-).  
 Tahiti, tah-hee'-tee.  
 Talavera, tä-l-a-vay'-ra.  
 Tangier, tan-jeer'.  
 Tampico, tam-pee'-co.  
 Tapajos, ta-pah'-yos.  
 Tar-ra-go'-na.  
 Taunton,<sup>6</sup> tan'-ton or tawn'-ton.  
 Tau'-ri-da.  
 Tavira, tah-vee'-ra.  
 Tcher-ni-gof'.  
 Te-he-ran', 37.  
 Tehuacan, tay-wa-kan'.  
 Te-huan'-te-pec (-wan'-).  
 Ten'-e-riffe.  
 Terceira, ter-say'-e-ra.  
 Terracina, ter-ra-cheen'-a.  
 Terra del Fuego (-fway-go).  
 Teschen, tesh-en.  
 Tet-u-an'.  
 Thames, temz.  
 Theake, theak'ë (Ithaca).

Theiss, tice.  
 Thiers, tee-air'.  
 Thiva, tee'-va.  
 Thorn, torn.  
 Theonville, tee-ong-veel'.  
 Thun, toon.  
 Thurgau, toor'-gou.  
 Ti-bet'.  
 Ticino, te-chee'-no.  
 Ti-con-de-ro'-ga.  
 Tim-buc-too'.  
 Ti-ti-ca'-ca, 3.  
 To-ba'-go.  
 Tocantins, to-can-teen'.  
 Toeplitz, tep'-lits.  
 To-kay'.  
 To-lo'-sa.  
 Ton-ga-ta-boo'.  
 Tonquin, ton-keen'.  
 Torino, too-ree'-no.  
 Tor-to'-la.  
 Toulon, too-lon'.  
 Toulouse, too-loor'.  
 Tour-nay'.  
 Tours, toor.  
 Tra-fal'-gar.  
 Tran-que-bar'.  
 Treb-i-sond'.  
 Trentham,<sup>7</sup> trent'-ham.  
 Treves, treevz or trave.  
 Tre-vi'-so, tre-vee'-so.  
 Trieste, tree-est'.  
 Trin-com-ä-lee'.  
 Tri-ni-dad'.  
 Trip'-ö-li.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Stonehenge*, from the Anglo-Saxon *stone* and *heng* (to hang.)

<sup>2</sup> *Stromöe* is from *stream* (or current), and *oe*, an island.

<sup>3</sup> *Sudbury*.—See note on *Norfolk*, page 209.

<sup>4</sup> *Sussex*.—See note on *Middlesex*, page 78.

<sup>5</sup> *Sutherland*, that is, *southern land*, with reference to the Orkneys.

<sup>6</sup> *Taunton*, that is, the *town* on the river *Tone*.

<sup>7</sup> *Trentham*, that is, the *home* or dwelling on the *Trent*.

<sup>8</sup> *Tripoli*, from the Greek *treis*, three, and *pōlis*, a city. See p. 120.



## 214 GEOGRAPHICAL PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

Tri-po-liz-za (-lit'-za).	Vendome, van-dome.
Trois Rivières, trwa-ree-ve-ar'.	Venezuela <sup>2</sup> (-zway'-la).
Troppau, trop'pou, 8.	Vermejo, ver-may'-ho.
Troyes, trwa.	Verviers, ver'-ve-a.
Trux'-il-lo, or troo'-heel'yo.	Ve-su'-vi-us.
Tudela, too-day'la.	Vi-cen'-za (-chen-), 27
Turcoing, toor-kwäng'.	Vigo, ves'go, 10.
Turin, too-reen'.	Vire, veer.
Tuy, twee.	Vlad-i-mir' (-meer)
Tver, twer or tver.	Voghera, vo-gay'-ra.
Tyrnan, ter'nou.	Vosges, vozh.
Ty-röl', or tyr'ol.	Walcheren, wäl'-ker-en.
U-cay'-a-le.	Wardhuus, ward'-hoos.
Udine, oo'-de-nay.	Warwick, <sup>3</sup> war'-ik.
Uist, wist.	Washita, wosh-e-taw.
Ukraine, oo'-krain.	Wavre, vavr
U'-le-a-borg.	Weimar, wi'-mar.
Ulea, oo'-le-a.	Wein'-heim, wine-hime.
Um-me-ra-poor'-a.	Widdin, vid'-din.
Unterwalden. <sup>1</sup>	Wis-bad'-en (vis-).
Up-sa'-la, 3.	Wis-con'-sin.
Ural, oo'-ral.	Wittenburg, vit'-ten-boorg.
Urbino ur-bee'-no.	Wool'-wich (-ich, or -idge).
Uri, oo'-ri.	Worcester, wor'-ster.
Uruguay, oo-roo-gwä'.	Xalapa, ha-lah'-pa, 29.
Ushant, oosh'-ang.	Xeres, hai'-res.
Utawas, oo'-ta-wasa.	Yarmouth, yar'-muth.
Utrecht, u'-trekt.	Yenikale, yen'-e-kal'-ä.
Valais, va-lay'.	Yeovil, yo'-vil.
Val-en-ci-ennes' (-en.)	Youghal, yaw'-hāl.
Val-la-do-lid' (-leed).	Ypres, ee'-p'r.
Valois, val-waw'.	Yssel, is'-sel.
Vaud, vo.	Yu-ca-tan'.
Vaucluse, vo-clooz.	Zurich, zu'-rik.
Veglia, vel'-ya.	Zuider Zee, zoi'-der-zay, <sup>4</sup> 22.
Velino, ve-lee'-no.	Zutphen, zoot'-fen.
Vendee, vawng'-day.	Zwoll, tswol.

<sup>1</sup> *Unterwalden*, that is, under the wood (*wald*).

<sup>2</sup> *Venezuela*, that is, *Little Venice*. A name given to it by the Spaniards, on observing the Indian villages raised on poles, in the Lake Maracaybo.

<sup>3</sup> *Warwick*. See the note on this word, page 73.

<sup>4</sup> *Zuider Zee*, that is, the *Southern Sea*, with reference to the North Sea or German Ocean.

# CELTIC ROOTS,

FROM WHICH THE NAMES OF MANY PLACES, PARTICULARLY  
IN IRELAND, ARE DERIVED.<sup>1</sup>

- Aa, Ach, Agh.* See note on *Aachen*, page 192.  
*Aber.* See note on *Abergavenny*, page 192.  
*Alp*, high; as "the *Alps*," and *Slieve-Alp* (in Mayo).  
*Ard.* See this word, page 194.  
*Ath.* See *Augh*; note on *Athenry*, page 195.  
*Avon*, water, a river. See note <sup>a</sup>, page 76.  
*Baan, Bawn.* See note on *Banbridge*, page 196.  
*Bal, Ball, Balhy.* See *Bal*, page 196.  
*Beg*, small or little; as *Arranbeg*, *Drumbeg*, *Ennisbeg*.  
*Bel.* See note on *Belfast*, page 197.  
*Ben, Pen*, a mountain, a promontory, or headland; as  
*Bengore*, *Benmore*, *Penmaenmaur*, &c.  
*Boy*, yellow; as *Boyanagh*, *Athboy*, *Bawnboy*, *Claneboy*.  
*Bun*, the mouth or end of a river; as *Buncrana*, *Bundoran*,  
*Bunduff*, *Bunratty*.  
*Car, Caer, Cahir*, a fort; as *Carlisle*, *Caernarvon*, *Cahir*,  
*Cahirciveen*.  
*Cairn, Carn*, a conical heap of stones, generally monu-  
mental; also, a mountain, properly one with a *cairn* on  
the top; as *Cairngaver*, *Cairngorm*.  
*Cam, Cambus*, crooked, bending; as *Camlough*, *Camolin*.  
*Cambuskenneth, Cambusmore*.  
*Clar*, a board, a table, a level; as *Clare*, *Ballyclare*, &c.  
*Clon*, a lawn, a meadow, a plain; as *Clonard*, *Clones*,  
*Clongowes*, *Clonmel*, *Clontarf*, &c.  
*Clough, Clogh*, a stone, a stone house, a strong or fortified  
house; as *Cloughjordan*, *Clogheen*, *Cloghnakilty*.  
*Craig, Carrick*, a rock, a *craggy* or rocky hill; as the  
*Craig of Ailsa*, *Carrick-a-rede*, *Carrickfergus*.  
*Croom, Crum*, crooked or bending; as *Croom*, *Crumlin*.  
*Cul*, the back or hinder part, a recess, an angle or corner;  
as *Cultra*, *Culmore*, *Culross*, *Coleraine*.  
*Derry, Dare*, the oak, an oak wood as *Ballinderry*, *Lon-*  
*donerry*, *Kildare*.

<sup>1</sup> In the Author's "Dictionary of Derivations," under the head  
of "Geographical Etymologies," these roots, and the names of the  
places derived from them, are more fully explained.

*Dhu*, black; as *Airdhu*, *Dhuisk*, *Roderick-Dhu*, *Douglass*, *Dublin*, *Annaduff*.

*Drum*, a ridge, a back, a hill; as *Drumbo*, *Drumbeg*, *Dromore*, *Dundrum*.

*Dun*, a fort, a fort on a hill, a hill, a fortified residence, a place of abode, a town. Hence *Dunbar*, *Dunblane*, *Dundalk*, *Dungannon*, *Dunmore*, *Dunkeld*, *Dunbarton*, *Downpatrick*, *Clifton Downs*, *Clarendon*, *Croydon*.

*Fer*, a man; as *Fermanagh*, *Fermoy*, *Fermoyle*.

*Gall*, a stranger or foreigner. See note, page 101.

*Inis*, *Innis*, *Ennis*, *Inch*, an island, a place nearly or occasionally surrounded by water; as *Ennis*, *Ennismore*, *Ennisbeg*, *Innishowen*, *Inch*, *Inchbeg*, *Inchmore*, *Inchkeith*, *Ballynahinch*, *Killinchy*, *Ynysmuck*.

*Inver*, another form of *Aber*. See note <sup>6</sup>, page 192.

*Ken*, *Kin*. See note on *Kinnaird*, page 205.

*Kill*. See note on *Kilkenny*, page 205.

*Knoc*, a hill; as the *Knock*, *Knockbreda*, *Knockduff*.

*Lin*, *Lyn*, a deep pool, particularly one formed below a waterfall; as *Camolin*, *Crumlin*, *Dublin*, *Roslin*, *Lynn-Regis* or *King's-Lynn*, *Chateaulin*.

*Magh*, a plain; as *Maghera*, *Magherabeg*, *Magheramore*, *Magheralin*, *Macroon*, *Maynooth*.

*Money*, a shrubbery, a brake; as *Moneybeg*, *Moneymore*, *Ballymoney*, *Carnmoney*.

*Mor*, *More*, great; as *Morecairn*, *Arranmore*, *Ballymore*, *Benmore*, *Dunmore*, *Strathmore*, *Penmaenmaur*.

*Moy*, another form of *magh*, a plain; as *Moycullen*, *Moycaskel*, *Moynalty*.

*Mull*, a bald or bare head, a bare headland; as the *Mull* of Cantyre, the *Mull* of Galloway.

*Mullen*, a mill; as *Mullingar*, *Mulintra*.

*Rath*, an earthen fort or mound; as *Rathbeg*, *Rathmore*.

*Ros*, *Ross*, a promontory or peninsula; as *Ross*, the *Rosses*, *Rossbeg*, *Rossmore*, *Kinross*, *Muckross*, *Melrose*.

*Slieve*, a mountain; as *Slievebawn*, *Slieveroe*.

*Strath*, a long and broad valley, through which a river generally flows; as *Strathaven*, *Strathmore*, *Strathfieldsay*.

*Tra*, a strand; as *Tralee*, *Tramore*, *Ballintra*, *Cultra*.





# Large and Small Maps.

*Bound in Rubbed and Varnished.*

Size 6 ft. 8 in. by 4 ft. 6 in.

World Map	1 lb.
Europe, Asia, Africa, America, New Zealand	1 lb.
Europe, Asia, Africa, America, New Zealand, Australia	1 lb.
Europe, Asia, Africa, America, New Zealand, Australia, Oceania	1 lb.
Europe, Asia, Africa, America, New Zealand, Australia, Oceania, Antarctica	1 lb.
Europe, Asia, Africa, America, New Zealand, Australia, Oceania, Antarctica, Greenland	1 lb.
Europe, Asia, Africa, America, New Zealand, Australia, Oceania, Antarctica, Greenland, Iceland	1 lb.
Europe, Asia, Africa, America, New Zealand, Australia, Oceania, Antarctica, Greenland, Iceland, Faroe Islands	1 lb.

## Philip's Smaller Series of School-room Maps.

*Bound in Rubbed and Varnished.*

Size 3 ft. 2 in. by 2 ft. 6 in., 7s. 6d.

Philip's Sheet Maps, U. C. C.

## Stott's Improved Educational Maps.

*Bound in Rubbed and Varnished.*

The World 4 ft. 4 in. by 3 ft. 1 in., 7s. 0d.

Europe, Asia, Africa, America, Australia, England, 7s. 0d.

United States, Canada, Mexico, each 2 ft. 2 in. by

1 ft. 11 in., each, 3s. 6d.

## Stott's Introductory Maps.

Each also accompanied by a book of exercises, same

price, price and system of the Introductory Maps.

Outline Sheet Maps, each 3d.

## National Society's Maps.

Size 4 ft. 4 in. by 3 ft. 2 in., in Rubbers, Varnished, 13s.

Size 3 ft. 6 in. by 2 ft. 6 in., in Rubbers, Varnished, 13s.

## Maps and Books.

Published under the authority of the Council of the

National Society, London.

A complete set of maps and books for school use,

and a complete set of maps and books for home use.

For further information, apply to the National Society,

1, St. Martin's Lane, London, W.C. 2.

Or to the National Society, 1, St. Martin's Lane, London, W.C. 2.

Or to the National Society, 1, St. Martin's Lane, London, W.C. 2.

